

CONNECT

2025

5th

PRIM.
FIRST TERM





Table of contents

Book Introduction

Part 1: Previous Year Revision	
The Present Simple Tense.....	6
Practice on the Present Simple Tense.....	9
The Present Continuous Tense.....	10
Practice on the Present Continuous Tense	12
The Past Simple Tense	13
Practice on the Past Simple Tense	15

Part 2:

1. Writing Skills	
A) Parts of Speech	16
B) Sentence Formation	18
C) Punctuation marks.....	19
D) Tips for writing a paragraph.....	21
2. Reading Skills	
A) Wh-questions.....	22
B) How to Answer Reading Comprehension Questions	24

Unit 2 I want to be healthy!

أريد أن أكون بصحة جيدة!

Lesson 1 : Vocabulary	62
Practice on Lesson 1	70
Lesson 2 : Language Focus	73
Practice on Lesson 2	76
Lesson 3 : Sports places and equipment	78
Practice on Lesson 3	82
Lessons 4 & 5 : Writing/Project	84
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	89
Unit 2 Review	91
Check Your Vocabulary	92
Writing Time	93
Student's Book Corner	94
Test Yourself on Unit 2	95
Al-Azhar Corner	97
October Revision	98

Theme 1 I discover myself

أنا أكتشف نفسي

Unit 1 We plant our food

نحن نزرع طعامنا

Lesson 1 : Vocabulary	27
Practice on Lesson 1	30
Lesson 2 : Language Focus	37
Practice on Lesson 2	40
Lesson 3 : Story	42
Practice on Lesson 3	47
Lessons 4 & 5 : Writing / Project	49
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	52
Unit 1 Review	54
Check Your Vocabulary	55
Writing Time	56
Student's Book Corner	57
Test Yourself on Unit 1	58
Al-Azhar Corner	60

Unit 3 How do I look?

كيف أبدو؟

Lesson 1: Vocabulary	102
Practice on Lesson 1	107
Lesson 2: Language Focus.....	113
Practice on Lesson 2	116
Lesson 3: Story.....	118
Practice on Lesson 3	123
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing / Project	125
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	129
Unit 3 Review	131
Check Your Vocabulary	132
Writing Time	133
Student's Book Corner	134
Test Yourself on Unit 3	135
Al-Azhar Corner	137

Theme 2 Myself and others نفسي والأخرون

Unit 4 Looking after our world الاعتناء بعالمنا

Lesson 1: Vocabulary	140
Practice on Lesson 1	143
Lesson 2: Language Focus	145
Practice on Lesson 2	147
Lesson 3: Eco-Tourism	149
Practice on Lesson 3	154
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing / Project	156
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	160
Unit 4 Review	162
Check Your Vocabulary	163
Writing Time	164
Student's Book Corner	165
Test Yourself on Unit 4	166
Al-Azhar Corner	168
November Revision	169

Unit 6 What's the weather like? ما هي حالة الطقس؟

Lesson 1: Vocabulary	209
Practice on Lesson 1	213
Lessons 2 & 3: Language Focus	218
Practice on Lessons 2 & 3	222
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing / Project	224
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	228
Unit 6 Review	230
Check Your Vocabulary	231
Writing Time	232
Student's Book Corner	233
Test Yourself on Unit 6	234
Al-Azhar Corner	236

Unit 5 Jobs we do وظائف نقوم بها

Lesson 1: Vocabulary	173
Practice on Lesson 1	178
Lesson 2: Language Focus	183
Practice on Lesson 2	186
Lesson 3: Story	188
Practice on Lesson 3	193
Lessons 4 & 5: Writing / Project	195
Practice on Lessons 4 & 5	199
Unit 5 Review	201
Check Your Vocabulary	202
Writing Time	203
Student's Book Corner	204
Test Yourself on Unit 5	205
Al-Azhar Corner	207

Final Revision & Exams

Revision Units 1 & 2	238
Revision Units 3 & 4	245
Revision Units 5 & 6	253
Conjugation of Verbs	261
Final Exams	263
Al-Azhar Exams	291
امتحانات دمج	297
Tapescripts	303
Writing Answers	307



Part 1:



Previous Year Revision

Revision on Grammar

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة قواعد اللغة التي درسها في الأعوام السابقة.

1. The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple tense to talk about habits, routines, and things we do every day.

نستخدم زمن المضارع البسيط للحديث عن العادات والروتين والأشياء التي نقوم بها كل يوم.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات

I/ We/ You/ They + (الفعل في المصدر) + ...

He/ She/ It + (الفعل في المصدر) + s, es, ies + ...

e.g. I **walk** to school every day.

e.g. She **walks** to school every day.

لاحظ

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):

s → e.g. Hala **wakes** up early in the morning.

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ss, sh, ch, o, x)، يضاف لها (es):

es → e.g. Dad **watches** TV every night.

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف الـ (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يتم حذف الـ (y) ويضاف للفعل (ies):

ies → e.g. My cousin **flies** to Paris every year.



إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف الـ (y) يسبقه حرف متحرك (a, e, i, o, u)، أضف حرف الـ (s) فقط:

e.g. Maged **plays** tennis on Fridays.

Negative Form: صيغة النفي

I/ We/ You/ They + **don't** + (الفعل في المصدر) + ...

He/ She/ It + **doesn't** + (الفعل في المصدر) + ...

e.g. The students **don't walk** to school.

e.g. Ola **doesn't play** tennis.

ملحوظة

(inf.) هي اختصار لكلمة (infinitive) وهي تعني الفعل في المصدر (في صورته الأساسية دون أية إضافات).

Yes/No Question:

السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال

Do
DoesI/ you/ we/ they
he/ she/ it

... (الفعل في المصدر) + ?



Answer الإجابة

Yes,
No,

subject (الفاعل)

do/ does.
don't/ doesn't.

e.g. A: Do Italians like pizza?

B: Yes, they do.

e.g. A: Does Amira have a car?

B: No, she doesn't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

Wh- word
كلمة الاستفهامdo
doesI/ you/ we/ they
he/ she/ it

... (الفعل في المصدر) + ?

e.g. A: What do you do on Friday?

B: I visit my grandmother.

e.g. A: What time does she get up?

B: She gets up at 6 am.

Keywords:

الكلمات الدالة:

always دائماً

usually عادةً

often غالباً

sometimes أحياناً

never أبداً

every (day, week, month, year)

(كل (يوم، أسبوع، شهر، سنة)

I always go to work by car.

I usually take the bus at 10 am.

My friends often play tennis after school.

We sometimes have chicken for lunch.

Mom never watches TV late at night.

I walk to school every day.

لاحظ

تأتي الكلمات الدالة في الجملة كالآتي:

e.g. Maha usually gets up at 7 am.

- قبل الفعل مباشرة:

e.g. She is always active.

- بعد (verb to be):

Verb to (be) in the Present Simple Tense

الفعل (يكون) في زمن المضارع البسيط

Affirmative Form

صيغة الإثبات

I am I'm happy.
He is He's hungry.
She is She's a nurse.
It is It's big.

Negative Form

صيغة النفي

I am not sad.
He is not = isn't thirsty.
She is not = isn't a pilot.
It is not = isn't small.

We are We're early.
You are You're students.
They are They're quiet.

We are not = aren't late.
You are not = aren't teachers.
They are not = aren't noisy.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بنعم/لا

+ Affirmative: They are happy.

الإثبات:

She is rich.

? Questions: Are they happy ?

السؤال:

Is she rich ?

Short Answer: Yes, they are. / No, they aren't. Yes, she is. / No, she isn't.

إجابة مختصرة:

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام

Wh- word

كلمة الاستفهام

am/is/are

subject (الفاعل)

..... ?

e.g. A: Where are you from?

B: I am from Egypt.

e.g. A: What time is the English lesson?

B: It is at 10 am.

Practice on the Present Simple Tense

1 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 People in Egypt (speak – speaks – speaking – to speak) Arabic.
- 2 A nurse (work – works – working – to work) in a hospital.
- 3 Mr Ali always (washed – wash – washes – washing) his truck on Saturday mornings.
- 4 We usually (listen – listens – listened – listening) to the radio in the morning.
- 5 Ali has a car. He (don't – doesn't – isn't – aren't) walk to work.
- 6 My parents don't (like – likes – liked – to like) watching TV.
- 7 Haidy doesn't (have – has – had – having) a car.
- 8 (Do – Does – Is – Have) your sister have a job?
- 9 (Do – Does – Is – Are) your sisters like football?
- 10 Do elephants (drink – drinks – drank – drinking) milk?
- 11 How (do – does – has – have) you usually go to work?
- 12 When does the train (arrive – arrives – arrived – arriving)?
- 13 We (am – is – are – be) very busy at the moment.
- 14 Nour (am – is – are – be) a good friend.
- 15 I (am not – isn't – aren't – don't) at work.

2 Read and correct:

- 1 Those gloves (costs) too much.
- 2 Sam (eat) too much, so he's really fat.
- 3 The library (close) at 5:00 pm.
- 4 Dina (have) three children.
- 5 Elephants (has) four legs and big trunks.
- 6 I have a DVD player, but I (doesn't) use it often.
- 7 The restaurant is really cheap, it (don't) cost much.
- 8 He doesn't (sings) well.
- 9 We don't (eating) dinner at 8 pm.
- 10 (Do) it often rain?
- 11 (Be) they your children?
- 12 What do the children (playing) after school?

2. The Present Continuous Tense زمن المضارع المستمر

We use the present continuous tense to express an action happening right now.

نستخدم زمن المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث يحدث الآن.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات

I	+	am	=	I'm	inf. (الفعل في المصدر) + ing ...
He She It	+	is	=	He's/ She's/ It's	
We They You	+	are	=	We're/ They're/ You're	

e.g. I am working.

e.g. Amr is playing.

e.g. The girls are studying.

Negative Form: صيغة النفي

I	am not	inf. (الفعل في المصدر) + ing ...
He She It	is not (isn't)	
We They You	are not (aren't)	

e.g. I am not eating my lunch.

e.g. Noha isn't walking to school.

e.g. The children aren't sleeping.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال

Is he/ she/ it
Are we/ you/ they inf. (الفعل في المصدر) + ing ...?



Answer الإجابة

Yes,
No, subject (الفاعل) am/ is/ are.
am not/ isn't/ aren't.

e.g. A: Is Ola driving to work?
B: Yes, she is.

e.g. A: Are you studying math?
B: No, I am not.

ملحوظة

- تتحول (Are you) في السؤال إلى (I am / We are) في الإجابة.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمات الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام am/ is/ are subject (الفاعل) inf. (الفعل في المصدر) + ing ...?

e.g. A: What is Nader doing?
B: He is playing football.

e.g. A: What are you waiting for?
B: We are waiting for the bus.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة:

Look! انظروا

Listen! استمعوا

now الآن

at the moment في هذه اللحظة

this (time) هذا (وقت)

Look! The match is starting.

Listen! The baby is crying.

Omar is flying his kite now.

I'm working at the moment.

Mom and dad are staying in London this week.

Practice on the Present Continuous Tense

1 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 I am (eat – eats – eating – ate) a sandwich now.
- 2 I am busy now. I (am have – have – having – am having) breakfast.
- 3 Dad (is – does – do – has) fixing the car at the moment.
- 4 Look! Sarah (sleeps – is sleeping – slept – sleep) on the couch.
- 5 We're (walked – walk – walking – walks) to the park now.
- 6 Look! The machines (works – is working – are working – work).
- 7 Ahmed and Ali (don't – aren't – isn't – doesn't) studying their lessons.
- 8 We (don't – are – is – doesn't) enjoying our holiday here so much.
- 9 Is he (plays – play – played – playing) now?
- 10 (Do – Are – Does – Is) you waiting for a bus?
- 11 What are you (drinks – drink – drinking – drank)?
- 12 A: Are you reading the story now? B: Yes, (we do – you are – you do – I am).
- 13 What (you are doing – are you doing – you do – do you) now?
- 14 How many sandwiches (are they eating – they are eating – eat – eating) at the moment?
- 15 Are you (pick – picking – picks – picked) up flowers from the garden?

2 Read and correct:

- 1 It is (rain) outside.
- 2 Look! Maya (wears) a beautiful dress.
- 3 Listen! The kids (play) in the playground.
- 4 He (not) eating fish now.
- 5 The kids (not) running in the street.
- 6 No, she (doesn't) listening to music now.
- 7 (Is) you doing your homework?
- 8 (Does) your mother working now?
- 9 She's reading a book (yesterday).
- 10 Why are you (learn) English this year?
- 11 Are you (clean) the room?
- 12 Is (they) studying?

3. The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

We use the past simple tense to express an action that happened and ended in the past at a certain time.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط لتعبير عن فعل حدث وانتهى في الماضي في وقت معين.

* نستخدم التصريف الثاني للفعل في زمن الماضي البسيط.

* الأفعال المنتظمة (regular verbs) تتكون بإضافة الـ (ed/ d/ ied) للفعل:

1. Regular Verbs

أفعال منتظمة

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها
:(ed)
travel → travel^{ed}

الأفعال المنتهية بـ () يضاف
لها (d):
mov → mov^d

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + () ،
يحذف حرف الـ (y) ويضاف (ied):
stu → stud^{ied}

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف متحرك +
حرف ساكن، يضاف لها () مع
مضاعفة الحرف الساكن.
st → st^{opped}

* الأفعال غير المنتظمة (irregular verbs) لا تتبع قاعدة عند تحويلها للماضي البسيط وتحفظ كما هي، على سبيل المثال:

2. Irregular Verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
buy	bought	make	made	wear	wore	come	came
go	went	get	got	write	wrote	grow	grew
take	took	sleep	slept	leave	left	have	had
drink	drank	do	did	sing	sang	eat	ate

Affirmative Form:

... التصريف الثاني للفعل + Subject

e.g. - I **visited** my grandparents last week.

- Hana **went** to the zoo yesterday.

Negative Form:

... الفعل في المصدر + didn't + Subject

e.g. Mai **didn't finish** her homework yesterday.

Yes/No Question: السؤال بـ (هل)

السؤال Question

A: Did + subject + (inf.) ...? الفعل في المصدر

الإجابة Answer

B: Yes,

B: No,

subject

did

didn't

e.g. A: Did you do your homework?

Or

B: Yes, I did.

B: No, I didn't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام

Wh- word ()

did

subject

...?

B: Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل

What did Talia do last night?

B: She watched TV last night.

Keywords: الكلمات الدالة

yesterday أمس

last الماضي

ago منذ

in the past في الماضي

Mona did her homework yesterday.

e.g. I traveled to Luxor last winter.

e.g. They had a car two years ago.

My grandpa lived in a village in the past.

Practice the Past Simple Tense

1 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 I (watch – watched – watches – watching) a movie last night.
- 2 She (went – go – goes – going) to work by bus yesterday.
- 3 We (live – lives – living – lived) in England in the past.
- 4 Sara (write – writes – wrote – writing) a letter to Mona four hours ago.
- 5 The children (go to bed – goes to bed – went to bed – went to bed) sleep early last night.
- 6 Adel (want – wants – wanted – wanting) want to go out yesterday.
- 7 He didn't (eat – eats – eating – ate) eggs for breakfast.
- 8 The bird didn't (eat – eats – eating – ate) the seeds.
- 9 (Do – Does – Did – Are) they go to school last week?
- 10 Did Ola (swim – swims – swam – swimming) in the pool?
- 11 Did Amany have a doll? Yes, she (have – has – had – having).
- 12 Did you play football? No, (play – plays – played – playing).
- 13 What time (go to bed – goes to bed – went to bed – went to bed) you go to bed yesterday?
- 14 When did you (clean – cleans – cleaned – cleaning) your room?
- 15 I got up at 6 (today – tomorrow – yesterday – now).

2 Read and correct:

- 1 They (walk) to school yesterday.
- 2 He (call) his friend an hour ago.
- 3 She (wears) a dress at the party last night.
- 4 Nora didn't (plays) the piano well.
- 5 I (not get) the gold medal last year.
- 6 The children (not) watch a movie. They played a game.
- 7 (Do) they climb the mountain last year?
- 8 Did your brother (had) his breakfast?
- 9 Did Nadin study English? Yes, she (was).
- 10 What (do) you do yesterday?
- 11 When (are) they arrive? They arrived at 10 am.
- 12 Where did she (works) last year?

1. Writing Skills

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أساسيات تكوين الجملة.



Parts of speech أجزاء الكلام

Nouns

الأسماء

Pronouns

الضمائر

Verbs

أفعال

Adjectives

الصفات

Prepositions

حروف الجر

Check

Nouns

* هي اسم شخص، حيوان، مكان، أو شيء.

e.g. Ola, cat, house, bus, ...

* قد يأتي الاسم فاعلاً (بداية الجملة) أو مفعولاً (بعد الفعل).

e.g. Nada has a car.

A monkey is climbing the tree.

Underline the nouns:

- 1 Ali is tall.
- 2 My school is big.
- 3 Mona likes pizza.

Check

Pronouns

* تحل محل الأسماء.

e.g. I, me, my, ...

* قد يأتي الضمير فاعلاً (بداية الجملة).

e.g. I have a car

This is my car.

Choose the pronoun:

- 1 (Ali – He) is my brother.
- 2 Sarah has (a – her) pen.
- 3 Dad gave (Nour – her) a present.

Check

Verbs

* تعبر الأفعال عن حدث.

e.g. play, go, drink, ...

* يأتي الفعل بعد الفاعل.

e.g. They play football.

Nader goes to school on foot.

Read and circle the verbs:

I get up at 6. I wash my face. I eat my breakfast. I walk to school. I study at school. I play tennis after school.

Check

Adjectives

* تصف الأسماء والضمائر.

e.g. fat, nice, hungry, ...

* قد تأتي الصفة قبل الاسم أو بعد الفعل (be).

e.g. This is the fat elephant.

The giraffe is tall.

Circle the adjective out:

- 1 girl – boy – big – man
- 2 small – read – run – write
- 3 book – pen – red – pencil

Prepositions

١- للدلالة عن الوقت أو المكان.

e.g. at, under, behind, ...

٢- تأتي حروف الجر قبل اسم أو ضمير آخر.

e.g. The cat is **under** the tree.

The chair is **behind** you.

I drink coffee **in** the morning.

Check

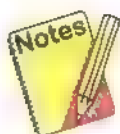
Read and reorder:

1 the sea – The fish – in – are.

2 on – my head – is.

3 is – at – home – Mom.

4 watch – at – TV – night.



Prepositions of Time:

لاحظ استخدامات حروف الجر الآتية:

at with times:
مع الأوقات

3 o'clock/ 3:30/ night

in with months, seasons,
and years:
مع الشهور، الفصول، والسنوات

summer/ May/ the morning/ 2018

on with days and dates:
مع الأيام والتواريخ

Friday/ 5th May/ May 5th

Check

Read and choose:

- 1 I get up (**at** – **in** – **on**) 8 o'clock.
- 2 We visit Grandma (**in** – **on** – **by**) Friday.
- 3 I was born (**at** – **on** – **in**) January.
- 4 My birthday is (**on** – **in** – **at**) June 7th.
- 5 My father sometimes comes late (**on** – **in** – **at**) night.
- 6 I bought a new car (**on** – **in** – **at**) 2023.
- 7 The football match is (**on** – **in** – **at**) 7 o'clock.
- 8 Are there any holidays (**on** – **in** – **at**) October?



Sentence Formation تكوين الجملة

* في اللغة الإنجليزية لا يوجد جمل اسمية وجمل فعلية ولكن تتكون الجملة من الآتي:

Subject

الفاعل

e.g. I eat a sandwich.

Verb

الفعل

e.g. Kareem drinks juice.

Complement

تكملة الجملة

e.g. She is tall.

١. الفاعل (Subject): هو من قام بالفعل ودائمًا ما يأتي في بداية الجملة ويمكن أن يكون اسم (شخص/بلد/مكان/حيوان/شياء) أو ضميرًا:

Ali studies English well.

Lions eat meat.

Egypt is a nice place.

A flower is red.

Our school is big.

He is a good boy.

تمرين

Read and choose the correct subject:

- 1 (A school – A table – Amr) listens to music.
- 2 (My father – A goat – A river) is a farmer.
- 3 (The chair – The tree – The cake) is tall and green.

٢. الفعل (verb): هو ما قام به الفاعل، ودائمًا ما يأتي بعده مباشرة.

e.g. I sleep early.

She washes the dishes.

تمرين

Read and underline the verbs:

- 1 They eat fish for lunch.
- 2 Hana takes the bus to work.
- 3 My friends are playing in the playground.

٣. تكملة الجملة () : هو ما يأتي بعد الفعل مباشرة وقد تكون (اسمًا / ضميرًا / صفة / ظرفًا / حرف جر / ...).

e.g.

I have a car.

She drives slowly.

Mona loves her cat.

I sleep in my bed.

Marwa is thin.

تمرين

Read and reorder:

- 1 book – I – read – a.
- 2 are – singing – Birds.
- 3 to – We – school – walk.

.....

.....

.....



Punctuation Marks علامات الترقيم

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من معرفة بعض علامات الترقيم التي تساعد في الكتابة بشكل صحيح.



Capital letters
الحروف الكبيرة

دائمه بحمله بحرفه الاولى / اليوم / يوم لاسموع / سنهور / بصمور / في و
مكان / بحمله / القعد الحسيات / اماء / لاسحص / البعد / لاسكن / سهور.

- e.g.
1. Ahmed is from Egypt.
 2. I am Egyptian and I speak Arabic.
 3. Today is Monday.
 4. I visited the Egyptian Museum in August.



Punctuate the following:

- 1 i visit my Grandpa on fridays.
- 2 asmaa went to china last year.
- 3 this is Mike from america.



Period (Full stop)
النقطة

- e.g.
- 1 I eat breakfast every day.
 - 2 Shut the window, please.



Question mark
علامة الاستفهام

* Wh- question:

- e.g. What are you doing?

* Yes/No Question:

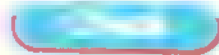
- e.g. Do you have a car?

م . نهاية السؤال .



Exclamation point
علامة التعجب

- e.g. Hi! / Wow! / I feel excited!



Punctuate the following using (. - ? - !):

- 1 The cat is red
- 2 Where is the dog
- 3 I love ice cream
- 4 You're great
- 5 Do you like chicken
- 6 Wow



الفاصلة السفلى

e.g. I like football tennis and basketball.

Yes of course.

I like playing sports but I don't like reading books.

Can I have some tea please?

نستخدم الفاصلة عند مكت فائمه بالاشياء او العبارات.

نستخدم بعد «Yes, No» في الإجابات.

but

نستخدم قبل "please" إذا جاء في نهاية الجملة.

Check

Put the (,) in the right place:

- 1 Can you help me please?
- 2 Hana's hobbies are reading drawing, and swimming.
- 3 No I don't have a car.



Apostrophe
الفاصلة العليا

e.g. Kareem's bag is blue.

I'm a girl.

نضع قبل «s» المملكية.

Check

Put the (') in the right place:

- 1 This is mom s room.
- 2 She s Sarah.
- 3 What s your name?

General Practice on punctuation marks

Find and write TWO (2) missing punctuation marks:

- 1 Mr ali is my teacher
- 2 noha goes to the club on monday.
- 3 What s your favorite color
- 4 do you like bananas
- 5 the baby is sleeping
- 6 i like to eat cheese
- 7 don t touch the candle.

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



نصائح لكتابة فقرة Tips for writing a paragraph

How to write a paragraph

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من كتابته فقرة إنشائية بطريقة صحيحة.

استخدم علامات الترقيم الصحيحة *punctuation*.

اترك مسافة صغيرة قبل أول جملة.

ابدأ الجملة بحرف كبير *capital letter*.

ضع نقطة آخر الجملة *(. period)*.

استخدم جملاً بسيطة مرتبة.

استخدم الزمن المناسب.

تأكد من عدم وجود أخطاء إملائية.

مسافة قبل أول جملة

أول كل جملة حرف (*capital*)

My family

I have a wonderful family. I love all of them. I live with my grandparents and parents. I have a sister. My father is an engineer. My mother is a school teacher. My sister and I go to the same school. We love each other. We go for picnics on holidays, eat dinner together, and watch TV together every evening I learn a lot from my family.

تأكد من استخدام علامات الترقيم (*comma*)

نهاية كل جملة (*period*)

2. Reading Skills



Wh- questions

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة كلمات الاستفهام والإجابة عن المطلوب بطريقة صحيحة.

What ...? ما / ماذا

للسؤال عن نوع ماهية الأشياء.

eg. A What is this?
B: This is a book.

Where ...? أين

للسؤال عن المكان.

eg. A Where are you?
B: We are at school.

When ...? متى

للسؤال عن الوقت.

eg. A When do you get up?
B: I get up at six in the morning.

Who ...? من

للسؤال عن العاقل.

eg. A Who is he?
B: He is my friend Ahmed.

Whose ...? لمن

للسؤال عن الملكية.

eg. A Whose car is this?
B: This is my car. / This car is mine.

Which ...? أي

للسؤال عن الاختيار.

eg. A Which present do you want?
B: I want the blue present.



Read and choose:

- 1 (What – Who) is he?
- 2 A: Who are they? B: They're my (friends – books).
- 3 (A. _____ B. _____) meal do you like to eat? Chicken and rice.
- 4 A: What is that? B: That is (a boy – a cat).
- 5 (Who – What) is your name?
- 6 A: (What – Whose) bag is this? B: It's my bag.
- 7 A: (When – Where) are you? B: I'm at home.
- 8 A: (Who – Which) dress do you want? B: The red dress.
- 9 A: (Where – When) do you play? B: In the club.
- 10 A: (Where – When) is the match? B: At 10 pm.

How ...? كيف

للسؤال عن الحال ووسيلة المواصلات.

- e.g. A: How do you go to school?
B: I go to school by bike.

How many ...? كم العدد

للسؤال عن العدد.

- e.g. A: How many pens are there?
B: There are six pens.

How old ...? كم العمر

للسؤال عن العمر.

- e.g. A: How old are you?
B: I'm six years old.

How long ...? كم الطول

الاطوال الأفقية.

- e.g. A: How long is this table?
B: It is 1 meter long.

How much ...? كم الثمن / الكمية

للسؤال عن الثمن / الكمية.

- e.g. A: How much are the shoes?
B: They are one hundred pounds.
A: How much water do you drink?
B: I drink 5 glasses of water a day.

Why ...? لماذا

للسؤال عن السبب.

- e.g. A: Why didn't you come to school?
B: I didn't come because I was ill.

Read and choose:

- (Who How) many apples are there in the box?
- How (much many) books did she read?
- A: How many students are there? B: (At school. – Ten.)
- (Who How) old are you?
- How (many – old) is your brother?
A: How old is he? B: He's (a teacher – 20).
- A: How (long – old) is the window? B: It's 90 cm.
- A: (When – How) do you go to work? B: I drive to work.
- A: (When – How) are you happy? B: Because I've got the full mark.
- A: (How Who) do they go to the club every week? B: By car.



How to Answer Reading Comprehension Questions

كيفية الإجابة عن أسئلة قطعة الفهم

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من إجابة أسئلة قطعة الفهم.

للإجابة عن قطعة القراءة المكونة من (80 – 90) كلمة في الورقة الامتحانية، اتبع الإرشادات الآتية:

I'm Nour. I use social media almost every day. Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share information and thoughts. I can find information for my homework online. I can talk to my friends and family on social media. I can share photos with my friends. My teacher always says it's important to be safe online. We shouldn't contact people we don't know. We should use strong passwords.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

Identify the general idea of the text.

حدد الإجابة التي تمثل الفكرة العامة.

The general idea of the text is about _____.

- a) playing video games b) social media c) reading books d) playing sports

Demonstrate understanding of specific details in the text.

اثبت أن لديك فهمًا واضحًا للتفاصيل المحددة في النص.

We can share information and _____ on social media.

- a) computers b) devices c) thoughts d) passwords

Determine the meaning of words and phrases in the text.

حدد وتفسر معنى الكلمات والعبارات في النص.

The underlined word "important" means _____.

- a) bad b) harmful c) good d) weak

B) Answer the following questions:

Describe the relationship between two people, events, ideas, or pieces of information in a text.

What is social media?

Social media is when we use computers and other devices to share information and thoughts.

Make logical inferences from the text.

استنتج من النص استنتاجات منطقية.

Why is social media important?

Because I can find information for my homework online. I can talk to my friends and family on social media. I can share photos with my friends.

Summarize the key supporting details and ideas in the text.

يمكن من تلخيص الأفكار الرئيسية والتفاصيل الداعمة في النص.

Summarize the text in two sentences.

Social media is useful, but you shouldn't contact people you don't know. You should use strong passwords.

Theme 1

I discover myself
أكتشف ذاتي



Unit

1

We plant our food

نحن نزرع طعامنا



Unit Overview

By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- listen, read, research, and write about different types of food.
- listen to a conversation about favorite food.
- practice making suggestions with "how about".
- read a fairy tale.
- practice saying vowel sounds.
- understand decimal fractions.
- write a recipe.
- research and make a poster about fruits and vegetables that grow in Egypt.

Did you know?

Pineapples don't grow on trees! They grow on the ground.

Find out!

Plants grow in different ways. Apples, for example, grow on trees. Strawberries, on the other hand, grow on *vines, while *berries grow on *bushes.

* vines

تكعيات / كروم

* berries

التوت

* bushes

شجيرات

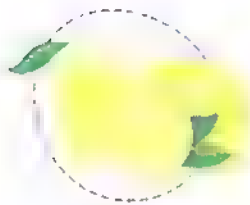


1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:

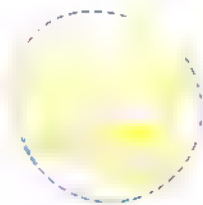


Main vocabulary



lemons

سمون



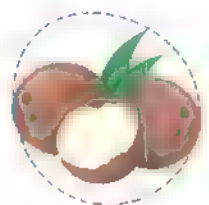
eggs



carrots

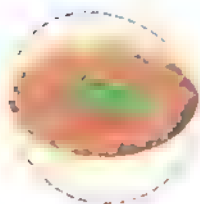


chocolate



coconuts

حور الهند



beans

فول



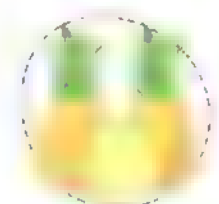
limes

ليمون حامض



onions

بصل



pineapples

اناناس



chicken

جاجة

Extra vocabulary

healthy (adj.)	صحي	favorite (adj.)	مفضل	little (adj.)	قليل
unhealthy (adj.)	غير صحي	a lot	كثيراً	mango	مانجو
garden	حديقة	potatoes	بطاطس	fresh (adj.)	طازج
market	سوق	pot	إناء / وعاء	lemonade	عصير الليمون

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
like يحب	liked	collect يجمع	collected
plant يزرع	planted	pick يقطع / يلتقط	picked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
think يعتقد	thought	grow يزرع	grew
sell يبيع	sold	buy يشتري	bought

Expressions and Phrases

That's easy!

هذا أمر سهل!

It's OK.

لا بأس.

How we grow lemons كيفية زراعة الليمون



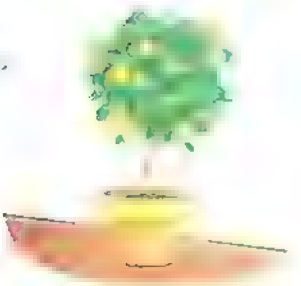
The girl is planting a lemon seed in a pot.



The lemon tree is starting to grow.



Some flowers are growing.



There are lemons on the tree.



The girl is picking the lemons.



She's making lemonade.

Important sentences جمل مهمة

- * Fareeda's favorite food is chocolate.
- * Chocolate is unhealthy if you eat a lot.
- * Fareeda has a mango tree in the garden.
- * Fareeda's uncle grows onions and potatoes.
- * Fareeda's uncle collects fresh eggs and sells them at the market.

طعام فريدة المفضل هو الشوكولاتة.
الشوكولاتة غير صحية إذا تناولتها بكثرة.
فريدة لديها شجرة مانجو في الحديقة.
عم فريدة يزرع البصل والمطاطس.

يجمع عم فريدة البيض الطازج ويبيعه في السوق.

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

I always have (trees — beans — flowers — grass) for breakfast.

Children like sweet food like (onions — carrots — chocolate — fish).

We add (ice — chocolate — coconuts — carrots) when we make a green salad.

What's your favorite (drink — color — subject — food)? B: It's chicken.

We have a (chocolate — chicken — lime — eggs) tree in the garden.

My uncle (drinks — makes — sells — grows) fish at the market.

Does Fareeda think chocolate is healthy?

هل تعتقد فريدة أن الشوكولاتة صحية؟



2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Dina

What's your favorite food, Fareeda?

ما هو طعامك المفضل يا فريدة؟



Fareeda

That's easy! It's chocolate.

هذا من سهل! إنها شوكولاتة.



Dina

Mmm... I love chocolate too. But it isn't healthy, is it?

أهه... أنا أحب الشوكولاتة أيضاً. لكنها ليست صحية، أليس كذلك؟



Fareeda

I think it's OK to eat a little. But yes, it is unhealthy if you eat a lot.

أعتقد أنه لا بأس من تناول القليل. ولكن نعم، إنها غير صحية إذا تناولت منها الكثير.



What's your favorite healthy food?

ما هو طعامك الصحي المفضل؟

Oh, I like chicken and I like fish. But my favorite is mango. We have a mango tree in the garden.

أحب الدجاج وسمك. ولكن طعامي المفضل هو أناناس.
لدينا شجرة مانجو في الحديقة.

Fareeda



Dina

I love mango too. We don't have a mango tree. We have a lime tree and a lemon tree.

أنا أحب المانجو أيضاً. لكننا ليس لدينا شجرة مانجو. لدينا شجرة ليمون وشجرة ليمون.

Fareeda



My uncle grows onions and potatoes. He has chickens too. He collects fresh eggs every day. Sometimes he sells them at the market.

عمي يزرع البصل والبطاطس. ولديه دجاج أيضاً. يقوم عمي بجمع البيض الطازج. وأحياناً يقوم ببيعها في السوق.



Listen to the audio and choose the correct answer.

اسمع وضع دائره حول الاجابه الصحيحه:



- 1 Fareeda's favorite food is
a) rice b) fish c) chocolate d) beans
- 2 Eating a lot of chocolate is
a) healthy b) good c) unhealthy d) nice
- 3 Fareeda's favorite fruit is
a) apple b) banana c) coconut d) mango
- 4 She has a mango tree in the
a) market b) garden c) house d) desert



Listen to the audio and choose the correct answer.

اختر الاجابه الصحيحه:

- 1 My grandpa is a farmer. He raises
a) fish b) onions c) chickens d) eggs
- 2 A: What's your favorite? B: I like pineapples.
a) sport b) fruit c) movie d) animal
- 3 give us eggs.
a) Goats b) Sheep c) Cats d) Chickens
- 4 Coconuts are
a) unhealthy b) healthy c) bad d) lucky
- 5 A is a kind of fruits.
a) carrot b) mango c) bean d) lime
- 6 Chocolate is a/an food.
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) easy d) cute
- 7 We mangoes in our garden.
a) grow b) play c) run d) go
- 8 Rabbits like to eat
a) carrots b) coconuts c) limes d) onions



Listen to the audio and choose the correct answer.

افرد واكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعده:

seed – farmer – Lemons – mango – lemonade

Ola likes planting trees. Her uncle is a(1)..... She learned everything about plants from her uncle. She plants a lemon(2)..... in a pot. The lemon tree starts to grow.(3)..... grow on the tree. Then, flowers grow. Ola picks the lemons. She makes delicious(4)..... for her family.

Read the text and answer the questions.

Waleed lives in a big house with his family. There is a big garden in the house where his grandpa grows many different kinds of vegetables and fruits. He grows tomatoes, carrots, and onions. There are lemon, lime, and mango trees as well. He has chickens, too. He collects fresh eggs and sells them at the market. Waleed's favorite healthy food is mango. He likes to eat it and use it to make delicious juice. Waleed likes chocolate, too. He knows it's unhealthy. But he thinks it's OK to eat a little.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Waleed's grows different kinds of vegetables and fruit.
a) grandma b) grandpa c) mother d) father
- 2 The underlined word "unhealthy" means
a) good for your body b) bad for your body
c) smart d) fresh

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why does Waleed eat a little chocolate?

- 4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 food – What's – healthy – favorite – your?

onions – grows – tomatoes – My farmer – and.

to – eat – It's – a little – OK – chocolate.

eggs – at – sells – My – the market – uncle.

Write the sentences.

- 1 fareeda's favorite food is chocolate

- 2 what's your favorite food



My Shopping List قائمة مشترياتى

1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

shopping list	قائمة مشتريات	tomatoes	طماطم	pineapple	ثمرة أناناس
mahalabia	مهلبية	boiled eggs	بيض مسلووق	koshari	كشرى

Extra vocabulary

trader	تاجر	lovely (adj.)	رائع	price	سعر
pounds	جنيهاات	kilogram	كيلوجرام	juicy (adj.)	كثير العصارة
lucky (adj.)	محظوظ	later	لاحقًا	fridge	ثلاجة
grapes	عنب	dessert	تحلية	food diaries	يوميات الطعام
breakfast	وجبة الإفطار	lunch	وجبة الغداء	dinner	وجبة العشاء
balanced diet	نظام غذائى متوازن	nutrients	مواد غذائية	sensible	معقول / منطقي
choices	اختيارات	delicious (adj.)	شهى	cupboard	دولاب / خزانة
bowl	سلطانية	nuts	مكسرات	cookies	بسكويت (كوكيز)

Conjugation of verbs تصرف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
need	needed	visit	visited
unpack	unpacked	collect	collected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
think	thought	come	came
buy	bought	say	said

Expressions and Phrases

How much ...?	كم الثمن ...؟	How about ...?	ماذا عن ...؟	They're a good price.	إنها بسعر جيد.
There you go.	تفضل.	in total	كليًا (إجماليًا)	haven't got	ليس لدينا
of course	بالطبع	for lunch	للغداء	It's my favorite!	إنه المفضل لدى
here are	ها هو	over there	هناك	on Mom's list	بقائمة أمى
until after	إلا بعد	for now	للوقت الحالى	make sure	يتأكد



2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Listening script page 6 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.

1. Mom: Lovely tomatoes! Come and buy! How about buying some lovely red tomatoes?

Mom: Oh, I think we need some tomatoes. How much are they?

2. Ibrahim: They're a good price: they're only three pounds for one kilogram.

Mom: OK. We'll have a kilogram, please.

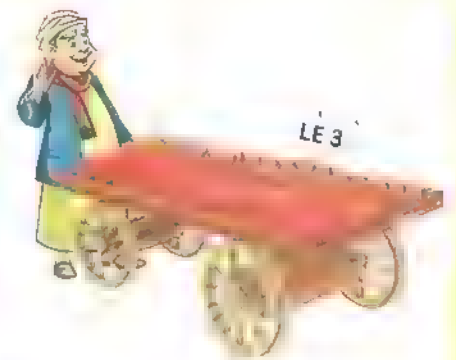
3. Ibrahim: How about buying some carrots too?

Mom: No, thank you.

Ibrahim: Mom, please can we have a pineapple?

Mom: Hmm, yes, Ibrahim! Let's buy a nice juicy pineapple.

4. Ibrahim: There you go. That'll be 20 pounds in total, please.



هنا متجر حمدة لبيع الفواكه والخضراوات الطازجة.

لدينا حبة جيدة من الفلفل.

2. Ibrahim: I really like coming to your house, Grandma.

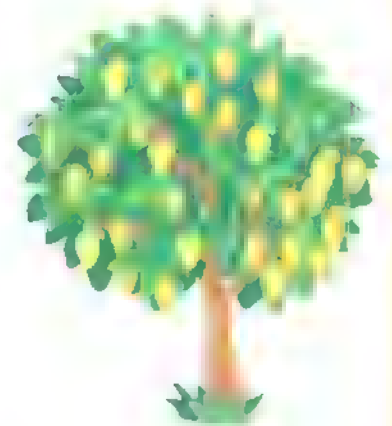
Grandma: I like it when you visit me, Nada.

3. Ibrahim: We haven't got a mango tree in our garden at home. We've got a lemon tree.

Grandma: I know. I'm lucky to have one. Would you like to have a mango now?

4. Ibrahim: Yes, please! I would also like to have your mango and coconut mahalabia later. Have you got any coconut?

Grandma: Yes, I bought some in the market this morning.



نحن لدينا شجرة مانجو في حديقتنا في البصرة لدينا شجرة ليمون.

مريم هي مستوردة لسلات مانجو من تونس في المتجر على سفوح لا.

هنا في متجر على سفوح لا، نبيع ليمون ومانجو في كل يوم.

3 **Mom:** Ashraf, will you come to the market with me?

Ashraf: Yes, of course. What do we need to buy?



Mom: We need to buy bread and rice. What would you like for lunch on Saturday?
Uncle Faisal is coming.

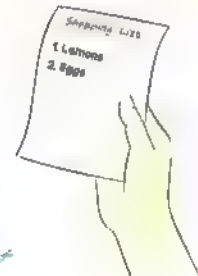
Oh, I would like koshari, please. It's my favorite!

Mom: OK, are there any onions in the fridge?

No, there aren't. So, we need to buy bread, rice, and onions.

4 **OK, what do we need to get, Amal?**

Amal: Mom says three lemons and some eggs.



Dad: Here are the lemons.

Amal: The eggs are over there. Oh, and chocolate too!

Dad: Is it on Mom's list?

Amal: No, it isn't. But can I have some, please?

Dad: OK, but don't eat it until after dinner, Amal.



3. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Mom

Jana, can you help me unpack the bags, please?

Yes, of course. Oh, good, you bought mangoes at the market. I love mangoes. Oh, and you bought chocolate. Mmm, delicious!

نعم بالطبع. وه، جيد، لقد اشتريت فاكهه من السوق. انا احب المانجو. وه، واشتريت شوكولاته
ممتعه.

Jana



Put that in the cupboard, please. It's for dessert tomorrow. We only have chocolate on Saturdays – it isn't very healthy.

يبدو انه من الشوكولاته. انا اريد ان يكون هذا. نحن نأكل الشوكولاته فقط في يوم السبت فقط.

Jana



OK. Where shall I put the cookies?



Please put them in the top cupboard. You can have one after school tomorrow, but just one – they aren't very healthy!

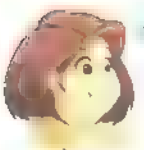
يبدو انهم ليسوا من الشوكولاته. انا اريد ان يكون هذا. نحن نأكل الشوكولاته فقط في يوم السبت فقط.

Jana



OK. I'll put the bananas in the fruit bowl on the table.

جيد، سأضعهم في وعاء الفاكهه على الطاولة.



Thank you. Is the chicken in the fridge? It's for shawerma for lunch today.

شكرا. هل الدجاج في الثلاجه؟ انه من اجل الشاورما على الغداء اليوم.

Jana



Yes, it's there with the carrots.

نعم، إنه موجود مع الجزر.



Thank you, Jana. Do you want Om Ali for dessert tonight? I bought a bag of nuts.

Jana



Yes, please, Mom! That's my favorite!

نعم، من فضلك يا أمي! هذا هو المفضل لدي.



4. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

FOOD DIARY

يوميات الطعام

Breakfast
وجبة الإفطارLunch
وجبة الغداءDinner
وجبة العشاء

Saturday	ful medames and bread, boiled eggs, fresh juice	koshari, salad, an orange	yogurt, fruit salad
Sunday	cheese and bread, cucumber, jam	chicken, French fries, rice	yogurt and honey, cake
Monday	2 fried eggs, French fries, cheese	burger and French fries	pizza

Tip! Make sure you eat a balanced diet so your body gets the nutrients it needs.

ful medames, salad, yogurt, and honey



Important sentences جمل هامة

- * I have ful medames and bread for breakfast. أتناول فولاً مدمساً وخبزاً على الفطور.
- * I have chicken, rice, and salad for lunch. أتناول الدجاج والأرز والسلطة على الغداء.
- * I have yogurt and fruit salad for dinner. أتناول زبادي وسلطة الفواكه على العشاء.
- * Boiled eggs, bread, and cheese are healthy food. البيض المسلوق والخبز والجبن من الأطعمة الصحية.
- * French fries and burgers are unhealthy food. البطاطس المقلية والبرغر من الأطعمة غير الصحية.



Language Focus

Countable and uncountable nouns

الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة

Countable nouns:

- هي الأسماء التي (تعد) ولها مفرد وجمع.
- الأسماء التي تعد تسبق بأداة تكرة (a/an) إذا كانت مفردة.
- الأسماء التي تعد تُجمع بـ (s/ es/ ies).

eg **a**n onion – onions
a mango – mangoes
a candy – candies

Uncountable nouns:

- هي الأسماء التي (لا تعد)، ليس لها جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- الأسماء التي لا تعد لا تسبق بأداة تكرة (a/an) ولا تُجمع بـ (s/ es/ ies).

eg rice – cheese
 water – milk – bread – sugar

a - an

- تستخدم "a" قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت حرف ساكن.

- **a** banana - **a** mango

- تستخدم "an" قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت حرف متحرك (a/ e/ i/ o/ u).

- **an** apple - **an** orange

some/ any with countable and uncountable nouns

(some) و (any) مع الأسماء الجمع المعدودة والأسماء غير المعدودة

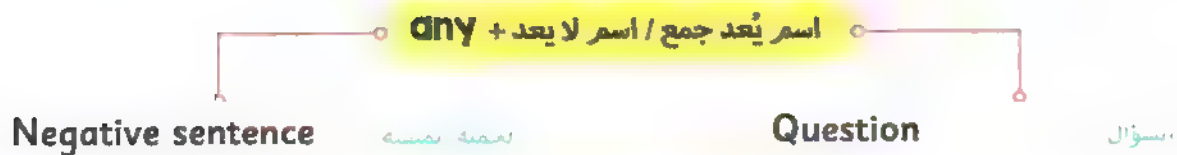
- تستخدم «some» مع الجمل المثبتة والعرض والطلب.



- Hana has **some** orange juice.
- The children ate **some** candies after lunch.

- Would you like **some** pineapples? (عرض)
 B: Yes, please.
- Can I have **some** rice, please? (طلب)
 B: Sure.

تستخدم "any" مع الجمل المنفية والسؤال مع الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة.



- There isn't water.
- We don't have onions.

- Are there books on the table?
- Is there butter in the fridge?

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- I eat (a – an – some – any) apple every day.
- Nader doesn't want (a – an – any – some) juice.
- Samar has (a – an – any – some) oranges.
- Are there (some – any – a – an) tomatoes?
- We haven't got (a – an – any – some) grapes.
Would you like an (apple – an apple – apples – apple's)?
- Do you have (a – an – any – some) onions?
- Can I have (a – an – any – some) tea?
- There (am – is – are – be) a chair in the room.
- There (am – is – are – be) some cars on the road.
- There (am – is – are – be) some rice for lunch.
- I haven't got (a – an – some – any) brothers or sisters.
- Are there any (carrot – a carrot – carrots – carrot's) for salad?
- (Am – Is – Are – Do) there a watermelon in the fridge?
- Would you like (a – an – some – any) bananas?

To Express Offers & Requests التعبير عن العروض والطلبات

To Express Offers: التعبير عن العروض:

لعرض شيء على أحد، يمكنك استخدام إحدى الطريقتين:

What would you like?

→ B I would like + (noun).

- I would like _____, please.

- I would like some _____, please.

How about + (noun) / (verb)?

B Yes, please.

And would you like some + (noun)?

B No, thank you.

e.g. - A: Would you like an orange?

B: Yes, please.

- A: How about buying some lemons?

B: No, thanks.

To Express Requests: التعبير عن الطلبات:

Can I have some + (noun), please?

e.g. - A: Can I have an apple, please?

B: Sure.

- A: Can I have some grapes, please?

B: Yes, of course.

Expressing Inquiries: التعبير عن الاستفسار:

Are there any + (noun)

Or

Do you have any + (noun)

- Are there any _____?

B Yes, there are lots of tomatoes.

- A: Do you have any grapes, too?

B: Yes, I do.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 (How – What – Who – When) would you like?
- 2 I would (likes – liking – liked – like) some koshari.
- 3 How about (eat – eats – eating – ate) some rice?
- 4 Can I have (a – an – any – some) pineapples?
- 5 (Is – Are – Do – Does) there any onions?
- 6 (Will – Would – Have – Are) you like some water?



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Bread is not on my shopping
a) market b) bag c) list d) computer
- Cookies and chocolate are food.
a) unhealthy b) good c) healthy d) fine
- Sara, can you help me the bags, please?
a) unpack b) unplug c) eat d) cry
- We buy fruits and vegetables at the
a) bakery b) market c) school d) library
- Om Ali is a
a) lunch b) dessert c) dinner d) breakfast

اللغة الإنجليزية 2021



Read the text and choose the correct words from the box.

قرا واكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات لمساعدة:

home – shopping – some – sorry – buy

Ali and Hani go shopping with their mom every week. Last week, Mom had pineapples, mangoes, grapes, and tomatoes on her(1)..... list. She needed to(2)..... bread, too. "Can I have(3)..... oranges, Mom?" Asked Hani. Mom said, "No, sorry you can't. It's not on our list". They bought what they needed and went(4)..... early.



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

صغ الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملة:

- any – have – Do – trees – you – mango?
.....
- like – you – What – have – would – to?
.....
- like – mango – Would – some – you – juice?
.....
- any – Samar – have – didn't – fruits.
.....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

- 1 Would you like (any) orange juice?
- 2 A: (Is) there any books? B: Yes, there are.
- 3 We don't have (some) onions.
- 4 Are there (some) tomatoes?
- 5 A (Do) you like some fish? B: No, thanks.
- 6 How about (go) to the zoo?
- 7 There (be) some potatoes.
- 8 There (be) any cheese at home.
- 9 (Who) much are the mangoes?
- 10 Can I have (some) apples?

Punctuate the following.

What would you like, amira

.....
eating a lot of fruits is healthy

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following given ideas.

اكتب نصا من ٣٠ كلمة باستخدام العناصر الآتية:

"Healthy food"

- Why is healthy food important?
- What healthy food can we eat?
- What is your food diary?

جواب مثالي
صفحة
397



Story

1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

beanstalk	ساق الفاصوليا	castle	قلعة	giant	عملاق
cage	قفص	golden egg	بيضة ذهبية	magic hen	دجاجة سحرية

Extra vocabulary

poor (adj.)	فقير	market	سوق	last (v.)	أخير
price	سعر	special (adj.)	خاص / مميز	gold coins	عملات ذهبية
rich (adj.)	غني	top	قمة	suddenly	فجأة
terrible (adj.)	مرعب - قبيح	axe	فأس	free (adj.)	حر

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
climb	climbed	count	counted
cry	cried	save	saved
reach	reached	grab	grabbed
chop	chopped	stay	stayed

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
sell	sold	meet	met
buy	bought	throw	threw
fall	fell	get	got

Expressions and Phrases

get a good price	يحصل على سعر جيد	out of the window	خارج النافذة	on the way to	في الطريق إلى
go all the way	يذهب على طول الطريق	up to the clouds	عاليًا نحو السحاب	at the very top	في أعلى القمة
look very sad	يبدو حزينًا للغاية	as soon as	بمجرد أن	run away	يهرب بعيدًا
at last	أخيرًا	Thank you for ...	شكرًا على ...	happily ever after	في سعادة أبدية

Definitions

giant	عملاق	a very, very big person	شخص كبير جدًا
grab (v.)	يتزعم	to pick something up quickly	أن يلتقط شيئًا ما سريعًا
castle	قلعة	a very large building built a long time ago	مبنى ضخم بُني منذ فترة طويلة
chop (v.)	يقطع	to cut something down	أن يقطع شيئًا ما
cage	قفص	a box in which we keep animals	صندوق نرى فيه الحيوانات

جاك وساق الفاصولياء Jack and the Beanstalk



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

Jack and his mother were very poor. "Go to the market and sell our last cow," said Jack's mother. "Please get a good price, Jack!"

On the way to the market, Jack met an old man. "I have these special beans. Do you want to buy them? They will make you rich!" said the man.



Jack bought the beans. But his mother was very angry. "We need food, Jack, not beans!" She threw them out of the window. "Sorry, Mom," said Jack. "I thought they would help us." Jack went to bed. He was sad and very hungry.

اشترى جاك البقوليات. لكن أمه كانت غاضبة جداً. "نحن بحاجة إلى طعام، وليس بقوليات!" قالت له. "عذراً، أمي، كنت أعتقد أنها ستساعدنا." ذهب جاك إلى الفراش. كان حزيناً جداً وجوعاً.

The middle

The next morning, Jack saw a very tall beanstalk in the garden. It went all the way up to the clouds. Jack climbed the beanstalk. At the very top, he saw a castle. Jack went inside to see if anyone needed help.

في اليوم التالي، رأى جاك ساقاً خضراء عالية جداً في الحديقة. امتدت حتى وصلت إلى السحب. تسلق جاك الساق. في الأعلى، رأى قلعة. ذهب جاك إلى الداخل ليرى إذا كان هناك من يحتاج المساعدة.

Suddenly, Jack saw a very big giant. He was counting bags of gold coins. There was a hen on the floor. The hen was in a cage. Next to the hen were some golden eggs. The hen looked very sad. It was a magic hen, and it could talk! "Help me, please," cried the hen. "Save me from this terrible giant!" "I'll help you!" said Jack.

فجأة، رأى جاك عملاقاً كبيراً جداً. كان يحسب أكياساً من عملات الذهب. كانت هناك دجاجة على الأرض. كانت الدجاجة في قفص. بجانب الدجاجة كانت بعض البيض الذهبية. بدت الدجاجة حزينة جداً. كانت دجاجة سحرية، وكانت تستطيع التحدث! "ساعدني، من فضلك،" صرخت الدجاجة. "انقذني من هذا العملاق المخيف!" "سأساعدك!" قال جاك.

كانت الدجاجة تملك قوة سحرية. كانت قادرة على التحدث. كانت الدجاجة تسمى "الدجاجة السحرية".

كانت الدجاجة تملك قوة سحرية. كانت قادرة على التحدث. كانت الدجاجة تسمى "الدجاجة السحرية".





As soon as Jack reached his garden, he grabbed his axe. He chopped down the beanstalk. The giant fell on the ground and ran away. The hen was happy! It was free at last!

"Thank you for helping me, Jack. You are a kind boy. Can I please stay with you and your mother?" Jack and his mother weren't poor anymore. They sold the golden eggs to buy food. Jack and his mother lived happily ever after.

Take care!

الذهب gold يعني مخصص في جملته

e.g The giant was counting bags of gold coins.

الحديقة garden هي مكان تسمى به

e.g There were some golden eggs.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Jack doesn't have money. He isn't (poor — rich — happy).
- 2 Jack met an old (girl — woman — man — hen) on the way to the market.
- 3 It was a magic hen, and it can (dance — eat — talk — fly)!
- 4 Jack went to the market to sell their (goats — cows — sheep — chicken).
- 5 Jack (chopped — built — cooked — drank) down the beanstalk.
- 6 The magic hen was in a (garden — cage — house — school).
- 7 The giant lives in a (house — castle — school — market).
- 8 Jack used a/an (cage — cage — beanstalk — axe) to cut down the tree.



Pronunciation

Short and long vowels الحروف المتحركة الطويلة والقصيرة

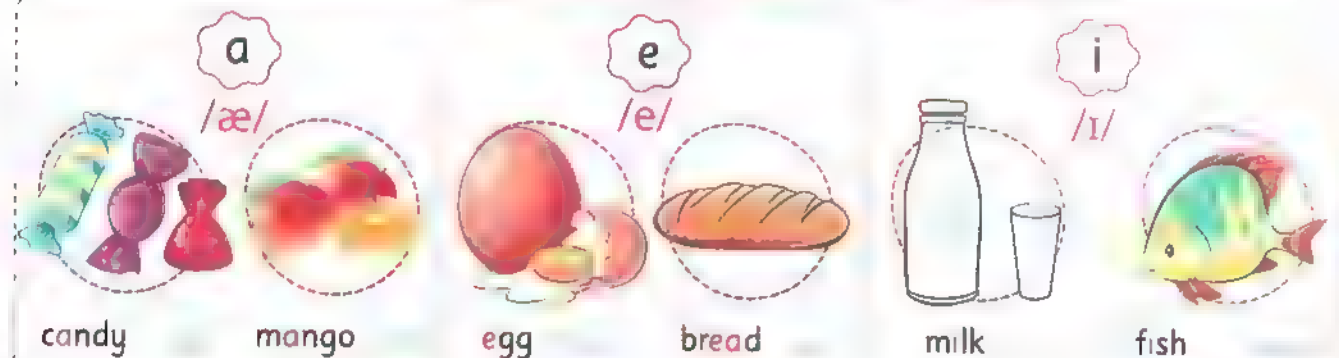


3. Listen, point, and say:

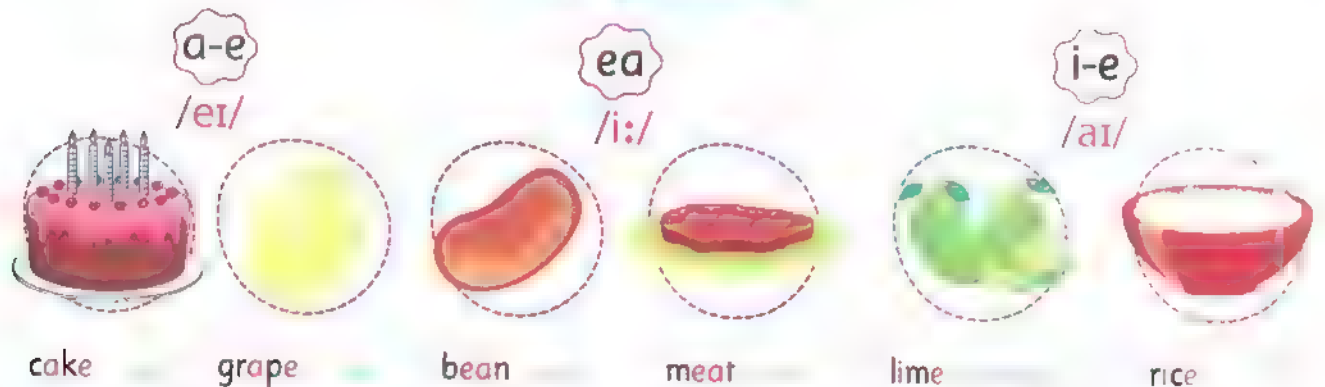
استمع، أشر وقل:



Short vowels



Long vowels



Some words sound the same but have different spelling.

بعض الكلمات متشابهة ولكن لها نطق مختلف.

/ei/	
a-e	ai
cake	rain
snake	pain
bake	tail
ay	
gray	
stay	
say	
play	



Decimal fractions الكسور العشرية

Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

A fraction is a number that describes the relationship between a part (represented by the numerator) and a whole (represented in the denominator).

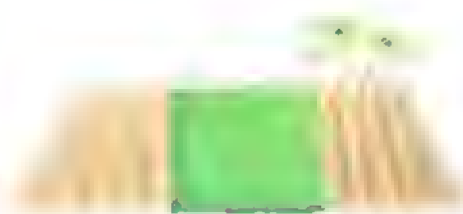
الكسر هو رقم يوضح العلاقة بين جزء (ممثل في بسط) وكل امتداد في مقام.

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{Numerator} & \longrightarrow & \frac{1}{2} \\ & & \longleftarrow \text{Denominator} \end{array}$$



$$\frac{1}{2} = 0.50$$

Amir planted $\frac{1}{2}$ of his field.



$$\frac{1}{3} = 0.333$$

Walaa planted $\frac{1}{3}$ of her field.



$$\frac{1}{4} = 0.25$$

Tarek planted $\frac{1}{4}$ of his field.



$$\frac{3}{4} = 0.75$$

Sherif planted $\frac{3}{4}$ of his field.



$$\frac{2}{5} = 0.40$$

Manar planted $\frac{2}{5}$ of her field.



$$\frac{1}{5} = 0.20$$

Lubna planted $\frac{1}{5}$ of her field.



Read and choose the correct answer for each question.

استمع وضع دائرة حول الإجابة الصحيحة:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Jack bought some special
a) apples b) rice c) beans d) wheat
- 2 The hen was in a
a) garden b) cage c) house d) tent
- 3 Next to the hen was a egg.
a) silver b) giant c) big d) golden
- 4 Jack and his mother became ever after.
a) sad b) poor c) magic d) rich



Read and choose the correct answer for each question.

- 1 We can buy and sell things at the
a) library b) school c) market d) park
- 2 He is a very, very big person; he is a
a) lucky b) giant c) magic d) rich
- 3 "....." is to cut something down.
a) Castle b) Giant c) Chop d) Grab
- 4 It was a hen. It could talk.
a) lucky b) bad c) magic d) rich
- 5 The farmer uses his to cut the wood.
a) bread b) axe c) clothes d) hen
- 6 A is a very large building built a long time ago.
a) market b) cage c) field d) castle
- 7 He has no money. He is
a) poor b) rich c) poor d) rash
- 8 Lions are kept in a at the zoo.
a) cage b) page c) bag d) coin



Read and choose the correct answer for each question.

اقرأ واكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة:

free – buy – rich – special – cow

دائرة الحبيثة 2024

Jack and his mother were poor. Jack went to sell his (1) in the market.
On his way, he met an old man. The man had (2) beans. He wanted Jack
to (3) them. He said the beans will make Jack (4) Jack
bought the beans at last.

Read the text and answer the questions

Once upon a time, a kind farmer lived with his wife in a village. They were very poor, but they were happy. Every morning, the farmer collected eggs from the hens to eat. One morning, the farmer found a golden egg, so he ran to tell his wife. He sold the golden egg at the market for a lot of money. This happened for a week, so he got a lot of money. They became very rich.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The farmer sold the golden egg at the
 a) farm b) house c) market d) bag
- The farmer and his wife were very with the golden eggs.
 a) sad b) unhappy c) old d) happy

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where did the farmer and his wife live?

Summarize the text in one sentence.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح ليكون جملاً:

1 was – The – in – hen – cage – a.

bought – special – Jack – the – beans.

price, – Jack – Please – good – a – get.

giant – from – Save – this – me – terrible.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences

1 Let's bake a cake

do you want to buy them



Writing



1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



Main vocabulary



weigh out (v.)

يزن



mix (v.)

يخبط



pour (v.)

يصب



bake (v.)



boil (v.)



cut (v.)

Extra vocabulary

recipe	وصفة طعام	ingredients	مكونات	semolina	دقيق السميد
melted butter	زبدة ذائنة	baking powder	مسحوق الخبز	coconut	جوز الهند
almonds	اللوز	syrup	شراب السكر	lentil soup	شورية عدس
molokhia	ملوخية	basbousa	بسبوسة	oven	فرن
mixture	خليط	baking dish	وعاء الخبز	diamond	شكل المعين
shape	شكل	pretty (adj.)	رائع	saucepan	قدر / إناء
instructions	تعليمات	drinks	مشروبات	dishes	أكلات
mango juice	عصير المانجو	cocktail juice	عصير كوكتيل	fruit salad	سلطة فواكه

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present		Past	Present		Past
turn	يشغل	turned	add	يضيف	added
mix	يخلط	mixed	share	يشارك	shared
pour	يصب	poured	cook	يطبخ	cooked

Expressions and Phrases

turn on	يشغل	get it hot	لتسخينه
on top of ...	في قمة الـ ...	on each	على كل واحدة
mix by hand	اخلطهم باستخدام يدك	looks really pretty	تبدو جميلة حقًا

Take care!

recipe = ingredients + instructions

الوصفة تعني المكونات مع التعليمات الخاصة بصنع الشيء.

(sp) تعني tea spoon وهي الملاعقة الصغيرة المخصصة للمشروبات.

(bsp) تعني table spoon وهي الملاعقة الكبيرة المخصصة للأكل.



* My favorite thing to bake is basbousa.

الشيء المفضل لدى هو خبز البسبوسة.

* First, turn on the oven to get it hot.

أولاً قم بتشغيل الفرن حتى يصبح ساخنًا.

* Then, mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, yogurt, and melted butter.

ثم اخلط السميد وجوز الهند والسكر والزبادى والزبدة المذابة.

* Bake the basbousa for 30 minutes.

اخبز البسبوسة لمدة ٣٠ دقيقة.

* Make the syrup and pour it over the basbousa.

قم بعمل الشرابات وصبه فوق البسبوسة.

Tip!

When writing a recipe, use the base form of verbs, and imperatives to give instructions. Use sequence words (first, then, after that, etc.) to organize your steps.

eg Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.



2. Look and read:

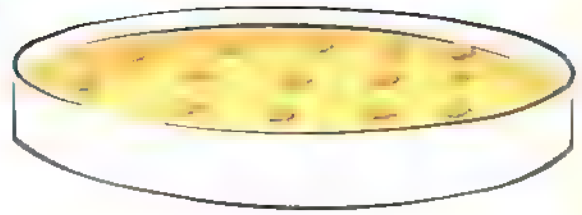
انظر واقرأ:

My favorite recipe

We cook lots of different things, such as lentil soup, ful medames, and Molokhia.

My favorite thing to bake is basbousa.

This is how you make it.



نحن نطهو العديد من الأشياء كشوربة العدس، وفول، مدمس، والفنوجية. أنا أفضل حب السبوسة. إنيك كيف تقوم بعملها

First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then weigh out the ingredients. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. You should mix these ingredients by hand. I love doing this!

أول ما نحتاجه أن نفتح الفرن حتى يسخن. ثم نوزن المكونات ثم نحيط بسبوسة وحب الفند والسكر والزبدة المذابة. يجب علينا خلطها باليد. أنا أحب فعل هذا

Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish.

ثم أضف الزبادي وصب الخليط في وعاء الخبز.

You can use a knife to make diamond shapes on top of the basbousa. Put an almond on each diamond. It looks really pretty. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes.

يمكنك استخدام السكين لصنع شكل الماس فوق السبوسة. ضع لوز على كل شكل. إنها جميلة.

حرف حصية. أخرجها في الفرن لمدة ثلاثين دقيقة

Make the syrup. Put the honey, water, and lemon juice into a saucepan. Boil the mixture for about 10 minutes. Take it out of the oven. Then pour the syrup over the basbousa. Cut the basbousa and share it with your family!

قم بعمل شراب لسكر. صب العسل والماء وعصير الليمون في قدر وقم بغلي مزيج لمدة ١٠ دقائق.

Ingredients

المكونات

2 cups semolina

1 cup yogurt

كوب واحد من اللبن

 $\frac{1}{3}$ cup sugar $\frac{1}{2}$ cup melted butter

1 tsp baking powder

1 cup coconut

almonds

syrup

 $\frac{3}{4}$ cup water

2 tbsp honey

مقدار كوب واحد من العسل

Mangoes grow in Egypt. We can make a lot of drinks and dishes with it. We can make delicious mango juice or cocktail juice. We can also make a fruit salad and a mango cake.

تنمو ثمار المانجو في مصر. يمكننا عمل العديد من المشروبات و، لاذني باستخدامها. يمكننا عمل عصير





1 the syrup over the basbousa.

- a) Bake b) Pour c) Boil d) Cut

2 We use to make basbousa.

- a) flour b) salt c) semolina d) cheese

3 "....." is a kind of nuts.

- a) Sugar b) Honey c) Yogurt d) Almond

4 To "....." is to know how heavy is something.

- a) pour b) share c) weigh out d) bake

5 Bake basbousa in the for 30 minutes.

- a) oven b) bowl c) saucepan d) dish

6 all the ingredients in a big bowl by hand.

- a) Tidy b) Mix c) Read d) Write

7 My favorite thing to is basbousa.

- a) drink b) bake c) draw d) listen

8 To make a cup of tea, you need to the water.

- a) bake b) boil c) eat d) chop



قرا واكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة

oven – delicious – ingredients – spicy – hand

الدقة: إدارة غرب المصرية 2024

My favorite recipe is basbousa. Mom buys the(1)..... from the supermarket. She mixes these ingredients by(2)..... Then, she bakes the basbousa in the(3)..... for 30 minutes. She makes the syrup for 10 minutes. Finally, she pours the syrup over the basbousa. It's very(4).....



Sally loves to make cakes. Her mother helps her bake the cakes. Sally likes to make chocolate cakes. Her sister likes vanilla cakes. She mixes the butter and the sugar. Then she pours the milk, the flour, and the baking powder. Her mother puts the cakes in the oven. When the cakes are done, Sally lets the cakes cool. Then she shares the cakes with her family. Sally loves her family.

الاستماع: إدارة الاستماع 2024

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Sally likes to make
a) cakes b) basbousa c) tea d) rice
- 2 Sally's sister likes cakes.
a) vanilla b) chocolate c) banana d) mango

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who helps Sally?

How does Sally make cakes?



Put the words in the correct order:

ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح ليكون حمل:

- 1 basbousa – What – the – are – of – ingredients?

- 2 to get – Turn on – oven – the – hot – it.

- 3 mixture – the – Pour – a baking – into – dish.

- 4 recipe – for – What – the – is – basbousa?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 mangoes grow in egypt.

what is the recipe for basbousa



Write the recipe for basbousa:

"My favorite recipe"

What is your favorite food? – How do you make it? – What are the ingredients?

الإسكندرية إدارة سيرف 2024

مواهب 426
صفحة 307

Unit 1

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

lemons	ليمون	eggs	بيض
carrots	جزر	chocolate	شيكولاتة
coconuts	جوز الهند	beans	فول
limes	ليمون حامض	onions	بصل
pineapples	أناناس	chicken	دجاجة
healthy	صحي	unhealthy	غير صحي
market	سوق	favorite	مفضل

Lesson (2)

shopping list	قائمة المشتريات	tomatoes	طماطم
mahalabia	مهلبية	boiled eggs	بيض مسلوق
koshari	كشري	trader	تاجر
price	سعر	lucky	محظوظ
fridge	ثلاجة	dessert	حلية
grapes	عنب	delicious	لذيذ
balanced diet	نظام غذائي متوازن	nuts	مكسرات

Lesson (3)

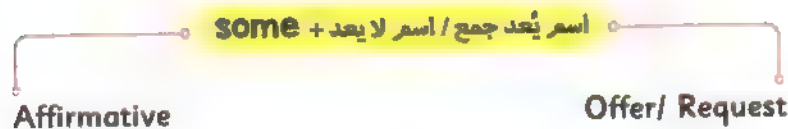
beanstalk	ساق الفاصولياء	castle	قلعة
giant	عملاق	cage	قفص
golden egg	بيضة ذهبية	magic hen	دجاجة سحرية
poor	فقير	special	مميز
rich	غني	axe	فأس
terrible	فظيح	free	حر

Lessons (4 & 5)

bake	يخبز	boil	يغلي
weigh out	يزن	cut	يقطع
mix	يخلط	pour	يصب
recipe	وصفة	ingredients	مكونات
oven	فرن	saucepan	قدر / إناء
instructions	تعليمات	baking dish	وعاء الخبز

Language Focus

some/ any with countable and uncountable nouns



- eg - Hana has **some** orange juice.
- The children ate **some** candies after lunch.

- eg - A: Would you like **some** pineapples? (عرض)
B: Yes, please.
- A: Can I have **some** rice, please? (طلب)
B: Sure.



- eg - There isn't **any** water.
- We don't have **any** onions.

- Are there **any** books on the table?
- Is there **any** butter in the fridge?

Unit 1

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

بطاطس
مانجو
جزر
فول
ليمون حامض
أناناس
شوكولاتة

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

بيض
جوز همد
بصل
ليمون
دجاجة
حديقة
طازج

Lesson 2

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

طماطم
سعر
ثلجة
مهلبية
بيض مقلى

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

قائمة مشتريات
سوق
تحلية
تاجر
جنيها

Lesson 3

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

قلعة
عنب
كيك
فقير
دجاجة سحرية
فأس
قفص
حر

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

لبن
فول
أرز
عملاق
بيضة ذهبية
عملات ذهبية
غنى
ساق الفاصوليا

Lessons 4 & 5

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

شورية عدس
يخبز
يخلط
يغلى
فرن
شراب السكر

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

يزن
يصب
يقطع
وصفة طعام
مكونات
خليط

WRITING TIME



تجميعاً لأهم
موضوعات
الوحدة

لكن يمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about your favorite food:

- My favorite food is (الاسم)
- It is (صفة)
- (الطعام المفضل) grow(s) (اسم شخص)
- We can make (الطعام المفضل) with (أكله)
- We can use (الطعام المفضل) to make (اسم الأكلة)

"My favorite food"

My favorite food is mango. It is healthy and delicious. My father grows mango trees in the garden. We can make delicious mango juice with mango.

We can use mangoes to make fruit salad, too. If we add sugar and milk, we can turn it into delicious mahalabia.

How to write about healthy food:

- Why is it important to eat healthy food?
- Is unhealthy food good for our bodies?
- How much unhealthy food do you eat?

"Healthy food"

It's very important to have healthy food. Healthy food helps our bodies grow. Unhealthy food is not good for our bodies. It can make you ill. I like to eat healthy food, but sometimes I want to eat chocolate or fries. I know they are unhealthy, but I think it's OK to eat a little.

How to write about your favorite recipe:

- My favorite recipe to cook is + (اسم الوصفة التي تحب) ...
- First, you need to + (أول خطوة من الوصفة) ...
- Then you mix (أذكر المكونات) ...
- Then you add (أدوات) ...
- Share it with your family.

"My favorite recipe"

My favorite recipe to cook is basbousa. First, you need to turn your oven on to get it hot. Then you mix the semolina, coconut, sugar, and melted butter. Then you add the yogurt and pour the mixture into a baking dish. Bake the basbousa in the oven for 30 minutes. Share it with your family.

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التي وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

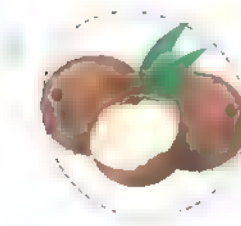
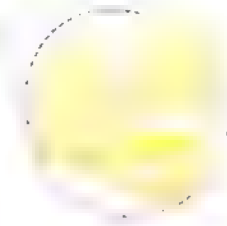
1 Look and circle the correct words:

انظر وضع دائرة حول الكلمات الصحيحة:

- 1 Are there any **tomato** / **tomatoes**?
- 2 I would like **some** / **any** eggs, please.
- 3 Please, can I have **a** / **an** apple?
- 4 I would like **a** / **an** pineapple and **a** / **an** orange.
- 5 Do you have **a** / **any** carrots, please?
- 6 How about **buy** / **buying** an apple, Mom?
- 7 How about buying some **grapes** / **grape**?

2 Look and write:

انظر واكتب:



3 Look at the words in bold. Match them to their meanings:

انظر إلى الكلمات بالخط العريض. صل الكلمات مع معانيها:

- | | |
|----------|--|
| 1 giant | a) a very large building built a long time ago |
| 2 grab | b) to cut something down |
| 3 castle | c) a box in which we keep animals |
| 4 chop | d) a very, very big person |
| 5 cage | e) to pick something up quickly |



Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

استمع واختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 6

- 1 Marwan eats too much food.
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) good d) perfect
- 2 He always has cheese, jam, and bread for
a) snack b) lunch c) breakfast d) dinner
- 3 He has for lunch.
a) bread b) rice c) meat d) candy
- 4 He has for dinner.
a) yogurt b) snack c) chocolate d) pizza



Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة: 4

- 1 Fish is food. It is good for your body.
a) easy b) healthy c) unhealthy d) fast
- 2 "....." means to cut something down.
a) Bake b) Chop c) Grab d) Help
- 3 I always like food.
a) bad b) healthy c) ugly d) dirty
- 4 "....." is a box in which we keep animals.
a) Grab b) Giant c) Castle d) Cage

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

اقرأ وأكمل النص باستخدام الكلمات المساعدة: 4

chocolate – little – chicken – grow – healthy

I love chocolate, but it's unhealthy. We should eat a(1)..... . My brother likes healthy food. He likes (2). and fish. Fruits and vegetables are very(3)..... . I love mango. We can(4). a mango tree in our garden.

Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة: 6

I'm Laila. I'm in grade five. I always get up at six. I have my breakfast with my family. I have yogurt and fruit salad. My sister likes to have fried eggs and bread. My parents like to have ful medames. In the afternoon, my mom and I go to the market. We buy chicken, burger, vegetables, and hummus for lunch. My sister and I always help our mom in the kitchen.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) mother b) sister c) family d) school
- 2 Laila is in grade
 a) five b) one c) four d) six

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where does Laila go in the afternoon?
- 4 What do Laila and her mom buy?



Writing



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: ضع الكلمات في الترتيب الصحيح لتكون جملًا:

2

1 would – like – I – carrots, – some – please.

الإسماعيلية - إدارة أبو صوير 2024

water, – I – some – can – have – please?

السكة



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

اقرأ واكتب الشكل الصحيح للكلمات بين الأقواس:

2

1 We haven't got (some) sugar.

2 Would you like (any) juice?

البحر - إدارة برج العرب 2024



Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1

where do mangoes grow

الإسماعيلية - إدارة أبو صوير 2024



Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

اكتب نصًا من (٣٠) كلمة مستخدمًا العناصر الآتية:

5

"My shopping list"

الإسكندرية - إدارة الصرّة تاي 2024

موجب على
صفحة
307

supermarket – milk

.....

.....

.....

.....



progress
★★★★★

< 50%

50 : 64%

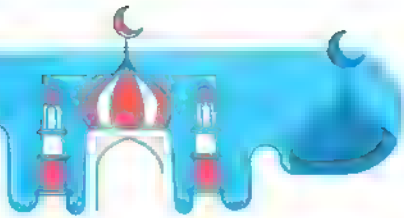
65 : 84%

85 : 100%

Practice more

Well done!

59



1 Read and complete the dialogue:

اقرأ وأكمل المحادثة:

any – aren't – garden – trees

Lama : What do you grow in your, Walaa?

Walaa : We grow lime and mango

Lama : Are there lemon trees?

Walaa : No, there

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

اقرأ النص وأجب عن الأسئلة:

My name is Sami. I'm in grade five. I love healthy food. I have my breakfast with my family at seven am. I have eggs, cheese, and orange juice. My sister Salma likes to have ful medames and bread for breakfast. In the afternoon, I help my mom in the kitchen. I set the table for lunch. Today, I'll have chicken and vegetables for lunch. After lunch, I'll have some fruit salad. I love being healthy.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Sami is in grade
a) one b) two c) three d) five
- 2 Sami loves food.
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) fresh d) sweet
- 3 They have at seven am.
a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) snack

Answer the following questions:

- 4 What does Sami have for breakfast?
- 5 How does Sami help his mom?

3 Choose the correct answer:

اختر الإجابة الصحيحة:

- 1 Can I have (some – an – any) water, please?
- 2 Are there (some – any – an) tomatoes left?
- 3 Candies and chocolate are (healthy – fresh – unhealthy).
- 4 When you (get – grow – plant) something, you pick it up quickly.
- 5 We use (salt – semolina – cheese) to make basbousa.



By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

- listen, read, research, and write about sports.
- talk about sports he/she is good or bad at.
- read and listen to a science fiction story.
- learn how to say single-syllable words
- write a biography about a famous Egyptian sportsperson.
- give a presentation about how to help his/her local environment.

Did you know?

There are lots of unusual sports you can try. They're fun, and they can keep you healthy! One of these games is bubble football.

Find out!

There are many unusual sports. In the sepak takraw game, you can't use your hands. You must use your feet, head, and knees only.



Sports الألعاب الرياضية



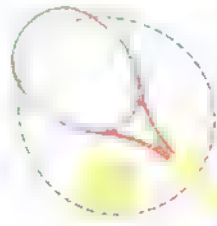
1. Listen, point, and say:



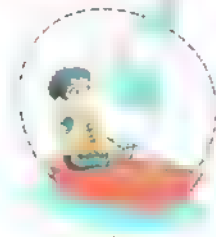
Main vocabulary



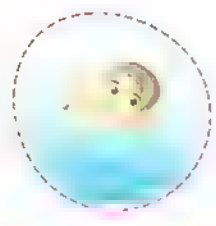
kung fu



tennis



sailing



swimming



squash

اسكو



karate

كاراته



football

كرة القدم



handball

Extra vocabulary

sports	ألعاب رياضية	match	مباراة	game	لعبة
club	النادي	favorites	المفضلات	awesome	رائع

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
watch	يشاهد	watched		love	يحب	loved
try	يحاول	tried		agree	يوافق	agreed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past		Present		Past
win	يفوز	won		know	يعرف	knew

Let's say it right!

- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (k) في كلمة (know) حرف (ك) صامت لا ينطق.
- لاحظ أن حرف الـ (e) في (karate) ينطق /i/.

Expressions and Phrases

talk about	يتحدث عن	Me too!	وأنا أيضًا!	Who's winning?	من الفائز؟
good at ...	جيد في ...	bad at ...	سئ في ...	What about you?	ماذا عنك؟
So do I.	وأنا كذلك.	better than ...	أفضل من ...	Let's + (inf.)	هيا بنا (للاقتراح)
on TV	على شاشة التلفزيون	worse than	أسوأ من	look fun	يبدو ممتعًا
See you later!	أراك لاحقًا!	agree to	يوافق أن	the most popular	الأكثر شعبية

Important sentences

- * Wael and Seleem love squash. وائل وسليم يحبان الإسكواش.
- * Wael is very good at playing tennis, but he is bad at playing handball. وائل جيد جدًا في لعب التنس، لكنه سيئ في لعب كرة اليد.
- * Seleem is good at playing squash, but he is bad at playing tennis. سليم جيد في لعب الإسكواش ولكنه سيئ في لعب التنس.
- * Wael loves watching swimming and sailing on TV. وائل يحب مشاهدة السباحة والإبحار على التلفزيون.
- * Seleem loves watching karate and kung fu on TV. سليم يحب مشاهدة الكاراتيه والكونغ فو على شاشة التلفزيون.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

- (Football – Swimming – Squash – Karate) is a game of 11 players.
- She likes water sports. She is very good at (swimming – karate – tennis – sailing).
- You need a ball for (swimming – karate – sailing – tennis).
- A: What (sports – colors – subjects – matches) are you good at?
B: I'm good at playing squash.
- We do sports at the (office – station – club – library).
- (Math – Orange – Karate – Books) is my favorite sport.



Find out!

The most popular sport in Egypt is football. Everyone loves to watch the game, and they also like playing the game.

رياضة الأكثر شعبية في مصر هي كرة القدم. يحب الجميع مشاهدة اللعبة، ثم يحبون لعبها.





What are you watching?



Wael



An old match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini - it's great. I love squash!

هنا قديمه من رانيم الويلي ونور الشربيني. إنها رائعة. أحب الباسكيت.



Me too! Who's winning?

من هو الفائز؟

Wael



Raneem - she's very good at playing squash.

رانيم هي جيدة جدًا في لعب الباسكيت.



I know. What sport are you good at?

أنا أعرف. ما هي الرياضة التي أنت جيد في لعبها؟

Wael



I'm very good at playing tennis, but I'm bad at playing handball. What about you?

أنا جيد جدًا في لعب التنس، لكني لا أحيد لعب كرة اليد. وماذا عنك؟



I'm good at playing squash, but I'm bad at playing tennis. I love football too.

أنا جيد في لعب الباسكيت، لكني لا أحيد لعب التنس. أنا أحب كرة القدم أيضًا.

Wael



So do I, but I'm better at tennis than I am at football. Let's go and play a game of football.

نعم، أنا أيضًا، لكني أفضل في التنس من كرة القدم. دعنا نذهب ونلعب كرة القدم.



Yes, let's go to the club later.



Yes! And what other sports do you watch on TV?

نعم! وما هي الألعاب الرياضية الأخرى التي تشاهدها على التلفزيون؟

Wael



Seleem

I love watching karate and kung fu. And you?

أحب مشاهدة: الكاراتيه وكونج فو. وما؟

My favorites are swimming and sailing. Sailing looks fun!

مفضلاتي هي السباحة والإبحار. الإبحار يبدو ممتعاً

Wael



Seleem

Great! So what time do you want to play football?

عظيم! إذن ما هو الوقت الذي تريد أن تلعب فيه كرة القدم؟

About five?

في حوالي الساعة الخامسة؟

Wael



Seleem

Awesome - see you in the club later!

ممتاز - ريث في النادي لاحقاً



Irregular comparative adjectives:

صفات المقارنة غير المنتظمة:

Adjective الصفه	Comparative adjective صفه ايمقاربه
good at	better at ... than
e.g. I'm good at squash.	e.g. I'm better at tennis than I am at football.
bad at	worse at ... than
e.g. I'm bad at playing football.	e.g. I'm worse at playing handball than I am at tennis.



Story



3. Listen and say

استمع واكتب



Main Vocabulary

awful (adj.)	مريع / فظيع	nightmare	كابوس	toxic (adj.)	سام
emissions	عوادم	shade	ظل	greenhouse	صوبة زراعية

Extra vocabulary

dangerous (adj.)	خطير	lungs	رئتان	problems	مشاكل
breathing	عملية التنفس	any more	بعد الآن	plastic	بلاستيك
dirty (adj.)	متسخ	outside	بالخارج	dream	حلم
planet	كوكب	gases	غازات	factories	مصانع
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	asleep	نائم	horrible	مريع

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
breathe	يُتنفس	breathed	يمكث
remember	يتذكر	remembered	stayed
		wait	waited

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
know	يعرف	knew	go
swim	يسبح	swam	يذهب
drive	يقود	drove	went
		keep	يسجل
			sat
			kept

Expressions and Phrases

dangerous for	خطير على	have to	يُضطر إلى	because of ...	بسبب ...
go on a holiday	يذهب في إجازة	too much	كثير جدًا	cut down	يقطع
it's time to ...	حان الوقت لـ ...	get ready for ...	يستعد لـ ...	look after	يعتني بـ
work hard	يعمل بجد	out of	بعيد عن	glass building	مبنى زجاجي
(be) used for	يُستخدم من أجل	dream about	يحلم بـ	wake up	يستيقظ

Definitions

toxic	سام	very bad to eat or breathe	سريع جدًا للأكل أو التنفس
emissions	عوادم	gases from cars or factories	الغازات الناتجة من السيارات أو المصانع
shade	ظل	an area which the light of the sun can't reach	منطقة لا يصلها ضوء الشمس
nightmare	كابوس	a bad dream	حلم مزعج
greenhouse	صوبة زراعية	a glass building used for growing plants	بناء زجاجي يستخدم لزراعة النباتات
breathe	يتنفس	to move air into and out of your lungs	أن يتحرك الهواء إلى داخل وخارج رئتيك

Take care!

بعض الأسماء يتم تكوينها بإضافة (اسم + اسم).

- e.g. night + mare = nightmare
green + house = greenhouse

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 We plant fruit in (shade – dream – greenhouses – sea).
- 2 I have a problem with (eyes – knees – breathing – arms). I can't breathe.
- 3 I like sitting in the (air – shade – factory – nightmare) away from the sun.
- 4 It's a very bad dream, it's a (shade – nightmare – breathing – plastic).
- 5 When we breathe, we move air into and out of our (ears – lungs – eyes – hearts).
- 6 Cars and factories produce (air – emissions – shade – greenhouse).

كابوس فظيع! An Awful Nightmare!



4. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

I can't breathe, I know that. The air is black and toxic. There are too many emissions from cars. It's dangerous for children's lungs and we have to stay at home. There are many days when we can't go to school because the air is too bad. My little brother had to go to the hospital because of problems with his breathing.



نفسه في البيت، أعرف ذلك. الهواء أسود وسمي. هناك الكثير من الانبعاثات من السيارات. إنه خطير على رئتي الأطفال ويجب علينا البقاء في المنزل. هناك الكثير من الأيام عندما لا يمكننا الذهاب إلى المدرسة لأن الهواء سيء جداً. أخي الصغير كان عليه الذهاب إلى المستشفى بسبب مشاكل في التنفس.

The middle

I remember when we could go to the park and play with our friends - the grass was green and the sky was blue. We could even see the sun. Now, we can't see the sun any more because the sky is gray or black. I remember going on holiday and playing on the beach with my family. We swam in the sea, but now we can't swim in the sea because there's too much plastic in it and it is dirty.



أذكر عندما كنا يمكننا الذهاب إلى المتنزه ولعب مع أصدقائنا - العشب أخضر والسماء زرقاء. يمكننا حتى أن نرى الشمس. الآن، لا يمكننا رؤية الشمس لأن السماء رمادية أو سوداء. أذكر الذهاب في إجازة ولعب على الشاطئ مع عائلتي. كنا نسبح في البحر، لكن الآن لا يمكننا السباحة في البحر لأن فيه الكثير من البلاستيك وهو قذر.

Other things I remember are eating fruit from trees and sitting in their shade on hot days. But now they cut down all the trees so we only have fruit from greenhouses and we can't sit outside any more.

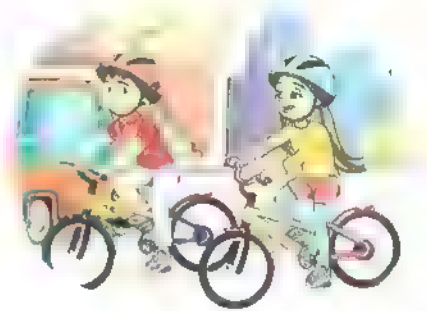


But wait, what's that? It's my mom calling and it's time to get ready for school! It was all an awful nightmare! I look outside and the sky is blue and I can see the sun. We're going to the park today. But I remember my dream and I know in my heart we need to look after our planet.



لكن مهلاً، ما هذا؟ إنها والدي ينادي وحين وقت الاستعداد للمدرسة. كان كل ذلك كابوساً مخيفاً. نظر إلى الخارج وسمعت أشعة الشمس، سمعت أصواتهم. اليوم، ينبغي تذكر حلمي وعلّم في قلبي أننا بحاجة إلى الاهتمام بكونيت.

We can drive our cars less, use our bikes more, plant trees, and keep our sea clean, but we must work hard at this!



يمكننا أن نسير بسيارتنا أقل، ونستخدم دراجتنا أكثر، ونحافظ على نظافة بحرينا، لكن يجب أن نعمل بجد في ذلك.

1 Why did the little brother go to the hospital?

2 How can we help protect our planet?

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 This story is mainly about a/an (school – nightmare – trees – family).
- 2 The word "dirty" means not (happy – ready – helpful – clean).
- 3 They remember sitting in the trees (leaves – branches – shade – fruits).
- 4 The girl's mom is calling her because it's time to go to the (hospital – supermarket – forest – school).



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:



- 1 Wael is very good at playing
a) football b) tennis c) squash d) handball
- 2 Seleem is bad at playing
a) karate b) squash c) tennis d) football
- 3 Seleem is watching an old match.
a) squash b) kung fu c) volleyball d) karate
- 4 Raneem El Weleily is the match.
a) losing b) watching c) hearing d) winning



2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 They are at tennis. They can't play it at all.
a) good b) bad c) great d) best
- 2 is important for us to breathe and live.
a) Air b) Gas c) Sea d) Pollution
- 3 "....." is an area which the light of the sun can't reach.
a) Acid b) Toxic c) Shade d) Emissions
- 4 The air is black and
a) delicious b) clear c) toxic d) beautiful
- 5 means a bad dream.
a) Nightmare b) Shade c) Greenhouse d) Shopping
- 6 I'm sad, I have a/an day.
a) good b) happy c) awesome d) awful
- 7 "....." are gases from cars or factories.
a) Toxic b) Shade c) Air d) Emissions
- 8 "....." is a glass building used for growing plants.
a) Emissions b) Shade c) Greenhouse d) Toxic



3 Read the text and choose the correct words in the box:

emissions – cutting – problem – toxic – planting

People in Cairo want to live in clean air and in a healthy environment, but the air is black and(1)..... . There's too much traffic. There are too many(2)..... from cars and factories, so we should solve the(3)..... by using more bikes and(4)..... more trees.



Seleem and Wael are friends. They both like sports. Wael is very good at playing tennis, but he is bad at playing handball. Seleem is good at playing squash, but he is bad at playing tennis. Seleem is watching an old squash match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini. Raneem is winning the match. Raneem is an Egyptian player, and she is one of the most famous squash players in the world. Seleem likes to watch karate and kung fu, too.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
 a) food b) books c) subjects d) sports
- is bad at playing handball.
 a) Seleem b) Wael c) Nour d) Raneem

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What is Seleem watching?

.....

Who is Raneem El Weleily?

.....



- 1 watching – match – a football – is – He.
- 2 sports – Egypt – do – What – have – we – in?
- 3 many – cars – There – emissions – too – are – from.
- 4 look – our planet – We – to – need – after.



Punctuate the following:

- 1 nader and maher are playing football.

.....

- 2 we can't go outside any more

.....





Lesson 2
I'm good at ...
أنا جيد في ...



Main vocabulary



climb trees



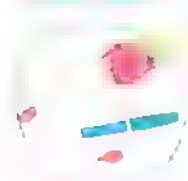
cook



do jigsaws



walk across the desert



write poems



help in the kitchen



make cakes



do math

Extra vocabulary

French

taekwondo

اللغة الفرنسية

رياضة التايكوندو

Arabic

table tennis

اللغة العربية

تنس الطاولة

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present

tidy

practice

يُرتب

يتدرب

Past

tidied

practiced

Present

climb

help

يتسلق

يساعد

Past

climbed

helped

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

speak

sing

يتحدث

يغني

Past

spoke

sang

Present

read

draw

يقرأ

يرسم

Past

read

drew

Expressions and Phrases

make dinner

on your own

يعد وجبة الغداء

بمفردك

play the piano

in a team

يلعب على البيانو

في فريق

Take care!

do

do karate

do kung fu

taekwondo

jigsaws

يلعب كاراتيه

يلعب كونغ فو

يلعب تايكوندو

يلعب الصور المتقطعة

play

play football

play chess

tennis

handball

يلعب كرة القدم

يلعب الشطرنج

يلعب التنس

يلعب كرة اليد

go

go swimming

go sailing

go windsurfing

go skiing

يسبح

يبحر

يتزلج على المياه

يتزلج على الجليد



Language Focus

great/ good/ bad + at

We use "good, great, bad + at" to talk about things we do or don't do well.

نستخدم (good, great, bad + at) للتحدث عن الأشياء التي نفعلها أو لا نفعلها بشكل جيد.

Form

Subject () + (am/is/are) + **great at/**
good at/ bad at + inf () + ing



I'm very **good at**
drawing.

Subject () + (am/is/are) + **great at/**
good at/ bad at + noun

I'm **great at**
handball.



He is very **bad at**
making cakes.

She is very **bad at**
football.



لاحظ عند إضافة (ing) للفعل:

١. إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (e)، فإنها تُحذف عند إضافة الـ (ing):

make → **making**

write → **writing**

٢. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوق بحرف متحرك، فإن الحرف الساكن الأخير يتم مضاعفته عند إضافة الـ (ing):

swim → **swimming**

clap → **clapping**

Hi, I'm Dalia. I'm **good at** playing football and **making** cakes. I'm **bad at** playing handball.



Asser is my brother. He's **good at** playing tennis, but he's **bad at** helping me in the kitchen!



My sister's name is Salma. She's **good at** doing math. She's **bad at** tidying her room!



We use (Why) to ask about reasons, and we use (because) to answer and give reasons.

نستخدم لماذا لسؤال عن الاسباب ونستخدم لان لاجابة وعلل الاسباب

e.g. A: Why are you good at table tennis?

B: I'm good at table tennis **because** I move fast.



Choose the correct answer:

She is great at (do – does – did – doing) math.

They are bad at (play – do – tennis – go).

Why are you good at swimming? B: (For – So – And – Because) I practice a lot.

I'm (good – great – bad – better) at speaking French, but I can speak English well.

My sister is bad (at – on – for – off) writing poems.

They are (badly – bad – worst – a bad) at sailing.

She (has – does – is – be) good at doing jigsaws.

What sport are you good (in – on – at – of)?





2. Read and notice:

امراً ولاحظ:

Adding and subtracting decimals

جمع وطرح الكسور العشرية:

- When you add or subtract decimals, treat them like whole numbers, but move the decimal point at the end so the position matches the numbers.

يجب بحسب الكسور العشرية و طرحها، نعاملها كالأعداد الصحيحة، لكن حرك نقطة العشرية في النهاية بحيث يتطابق موضع

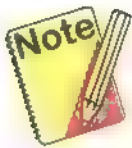
e.g.

$$\begin{array}{r} 2.367 \\ + 8.145 \\ \hline 10.512 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} 10.512 \\ - 8.145 \\ \hline 2.367 \end{array}$$

- The position of the decimal point has to match the position in the original numbers.

حيث أن يتطابق موضع النقطة العشرية مع موضع الأرقام الأصلية.



- To get the total number, we "Add":

لنحصل على العدد الإجمالي، فإننا "نجمع":

e.g. Jihan ran 3.567 km on Sunday and 5.258 km on Tuesday.

What is the total distance that Jihan ran?

SB

$$3.567 + 5.258 = 8.825 \text{ km}$$

- To get the difference, we "Subtract":

لنحصل على الفرق، فإننا "نطرح":

e.g. If one tree is 3.457 meters tall and another tree is 2.753 meters tall,

what is the difference in height between both trees?

SB

$$3.459 - 2.753 = 0.706 \text{ meter}$$



1 Choose the correct word to complete the sentence.

- 1 Hala went to the kitchen to a cake. لمعص، 2024
 a) buy b) make c) do d) write
- 2 They are at tennis. They can't play it at all.
 a) good b) bad c) great d) best
- 3 I like kung fu.
 a) doing b) playing c) swimming d) going
- 4 are good at climbing trees. للذهبية ادارة غرب المتصرفه 2024
 a) Lions b) Elephants c) Monkeys d) Tigers
- 5 I'm great at poems.
 a) doing b) playing c) climbing d) writing
- 6 She is bad at doing
 a) book b) pen c) math d) nice

2 Read the text and choose the correct words in the box.

poems – math – trees – doing – making

I'm Hana. This is my family. These are my mother, my father, and my sister. My father is very good at cooking and(1)..... jigsaws. My mother is very good at making cakes and writing(2)..... . My sister is very good at doing(3)..... and helping in the kitchen. I'm very good at climbing(4)..... and doing taekwondo.

3 Read the text and choose the correct words in the box.

- 1 football – playing – good – I'm – at – very. لجودا إدارة كروية 2024
- 2 at – jumping – very – Cats – good – are.
- 3 good – football – Ali – playing – at – is.
- 4 at – What – you – bad – are – sports?

4

- 1 They are bad at (run).
- 2 Ali is good (in) Arabic.
- 3 She (be) good at tidying her room.
- 4 I'm good at table tennis (but) I can run fast.
- 5 Reem is very good at (write) poems.
- 6 Hazem is great at (do) karate.
- 7 I am bad at (spoke) French.
- 8 She is very good at (play) handball.
- 9 My brother is great at (does) jigsaws.
- 10 I am good at (draw) pictures.
- 11 She is bad (in) singing.

5

what are you good at

- 2 she's good at reading english.

6

elements:

"My favorite sport"
practice – good at – club

أهـ لـ لـ لـ
لـ لـ لـ
30 "



Sports places and equipment الأماكن والمعدات الرياضية



1 Listen, point, and say.

استمع، أشر، وقل:



Definitions

أماكن
Places

football pitch

ملعب كرة القدم



This is where I play football.

هذا هو المكان الذي أَلْعَب فيه كرة القدم.

tennis court

ملعب تنس



This is where I play tennis.

هذا هو المكان الذي أَلْعَب فيه التنس.

swimming pool

حمام السباحة



This is where I go swimming.

هذا هو المكان حيث أذهب للسباحة.

معدات وأدوات
Equipment

karate suit

بدلة الكاراتيه



This is what I wear to do karate.

هذا ما أرتديه لممارسة الكاراتيه.

football boots

أحذية كرة القدم



This is what I wear to play football.

هذا ما أرتديه لألعب كرة القدم.

squash rackets

مضارب الإسكواش



This is what I use to play squash.

هذا ما أستخدمه لألعب الإسكواش.

swimming goggles

نظارات السباحة



This is what I wear to go swimming.

هذا ما أرتديه لممارسة السباحة.

رياضة
Sport

kung fu

كونغ فو



This is when I do high kicks.

It rhymes with "you" and "two".

هذا عندما أقوم بالركلات العالية. إنها تتأغم مع «you» و«two».

Extra vocabulary

pitch

ملعب

moves

حركات

high

عالٍ

kicks

ركلات

court

فناء (ملعب)

awesome (adj.)

رائع

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

Present

Past

kick

يركل

kicked

practice

يتدرب

practiced

rhyme

يتأغم

rhymed

use

يستخدم

used



2 Listen, read and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتقم في الأدوار



I love my sport - kicking a ball on a pitch is my favorite thing.

أحب رياضي، أن أركل الكرة في الملعب هو الشيء المفضل لي.



Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me. I feel like a different person.

يواحد في حوض السباحة وممارسته هذه الرياضة هو أفضل شيء بالنسبة لي. أشعر بأني شخص مختلف.



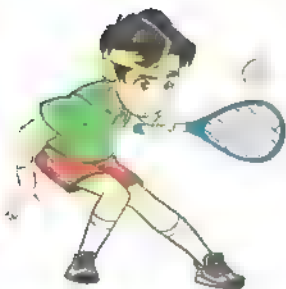
I like the way I can do lots of different moves. I like high kicks best. My suit for this sport is white.

أحب الطريقة التي يمكنني بها القيام بالعديد من الحركات المختلفة. أنا أفضل التمرينات العالية. بدلة التي يرتديها بممارسته هذا الرياضة بيضاء اللون.



I love this sport because I'm very good at it. You play on a small court with walls all around. You have a small racket and you move very fast. You get really hot too.

أنا أحب تلك الرياضة لأنني جيد جدًا بها. أنت تلعب هذه الرياضة في ملعب صغير محاط بالجدران، تكون يدك مضرب صغير وتتحرك بسرعة كبيرة وتشعر بالحرارة أيضًا.



I think it's an awesome sport and I practice a lot in the summer. They have tennis courts in the park and I go there with my friends.

أعتقد أنها رياضة رائعة وأتدرب عليها كثيرًا في الصيف. لديهم ملاعب تنس في الحديقة وأنا أذهب إلى هناك مع أصدقائي.

Take care!

لاحظ أن كلمة equipment لا تجمع.



Pronunciation



3. Listen, say, and notice:



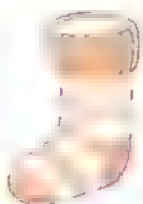
Short vowels



sun



man



sock



pen



cat



red

/eɪ/



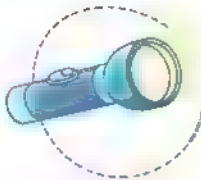
pan

/i:/



tea

/aɪ/



light

/əʊ/



rose

/u:/



two



make



feet



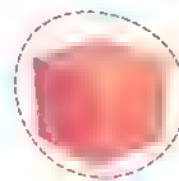
cr



cone



fuel



cube

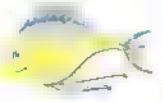
Blend in sounds in one syllable word: دمج الأصوات في كلمة ذات مقطع لفظي واحد:

When we pronounce a word, we don't say the letters, but we say the sounds.

عندما نبتدأ كلمة، لا نقول الحروف، بل نقول أصوات.

e.g.

f + i + sh → fish has 4 letters, but it has 3 sounds (f - I -).



d + o + l → dol has 4 letters, but it has 3 sounds (d - o -).



f + u + l → ful has 4 letters, but it has 3 sounds (f - u - l).



n + e + k → nek has 4 letters, but it has 3 sounds (n - e - k).



Syllable:

المقطع اللفظي:

A syllable is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.

المقطع اللفظي هو جزء من كلمة يحتوي على صوت واحد متحرك.

Blend in sounds in one syllable word:

دمج الأصوات في كلمات ذات مقطعين:

sp + der = spider عنكبوت	te + cher = teacher معلم	ro + bot = robot الإنسان الآلي	pa + per = paper ورقة	ba + by = baby طفل رضيع
de + lete = delete محو	win + dow = window نافذة	ra + cket = racket مضرب	hu + man = human إنسان	ti + ger = tiger نمر
fi + nal = final نهائي	ho + tel = hotel فندق	mu + sic = music موسيقى	E + gypt = Egypt مصر	po + lute = pollute تلوث



1. Complete the sentences with the correct word from the box.

Remembering (1) (2) (3) (4) (5) (6) (7) (8) (9) (10)



- 1 Rami likes as he can do a lot of moves.
a) kung fu b) karate c) squash d) tennis
- 2 Hana goes to the swimming pool a week.
a) once b) twice c) three times d) four times
- 3 Ahmed plays football on the
a) pitch b) court c) ground d) floor
- 4 Amira's is white and blue.
a) suit b) ball c) skirt d) racket



2. Complete the sentences with the correct word from the box.

- 1 We wear football to play football.
a) goggles b) sandals c) boots d) rackets
- 2 Let's go to the pitch.
a) court b) sailing c) swimming d) football
- 3 I use my when I play squash.
a) pitches b) goggles c) boots d) racket
- 4 We wear swimming to go swimming.
a) glass b) pool c) rackets d) goggles
- 5 I love swimming, I go to the swimming on Friday.
a) pitch b) court c) pool d) bank
- 6 We play tennis in the
a) pool b) pitch c) court d) class
- 7 When we play, we do high kicks.
a) swimming b) tennis c) kung fu d) squash
- 8 The karate is always white.
a) belt b) suit c) sock d) shirt



3. Complete the sentences with the correct word from the box.

racket – court – suit – shorts – moves

Mahmoud plays squash. He loves this sport because he's very good at it. He plays on a small(1)..... with walls all around. He has a small(2)..... and he moves very fast. Farida does karate. She likes the way she can do lots of different(3)..... She likes high kicks best. Her(4)..... for this sport is white.



Ali, Aya, and Marwa like sports. Ali likes football. He plays it with his friends on Friday. They play football on the pitch. His team always wins. Marwa likes swimming. She goes to the swimming pool every day. She wears goggles when she swims. Marwa's friends like her because she is kind and clever. She helps her friends all the time. Aya is a good squash player. Her racket is red and white. They are good players. They advise people to practice sports.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Ali and his friends play football on a
a) court b) pool c) pitch d) street
- 2 Aya's racket is
a) red b) white c) red and black d) red and white

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why do Marwa's friends like her?
.....
- 4 What sport does Aya like?
.....



1 court – I – the tennis – play – on – tennis.

goggles – He – goes – wears – when – he – swimming.

am – at – good – tennis – I – playing.

4 football boots – I – to – football – wear – play.



Punctuate the following:

1 they have tennis courts in the park
.....

why are you good at kung fu
.....





Unit 9 & 10

Writing & Project



1. Listen and say:

اسمع وقل.



Main vocabulary

biography	السيرة الذاتية	taekwondo	رياضة التايكوندو	medal	ميدالية
athlete	لاعب رياضي	competitor	منافس	organisms	الكائنات الحية

Extra vocabulary

flag	علم	amazing (adj.)	مذهل	prize	جائزة
bronze	برونزية	Moroccan	مغربي	therefore	لذلك
gold (adj.)	ذهبي	future	مستقبل	sportsperson	شخص رياضي
success	نجاح	career	الحياة المهنية	successful (adj.)	ناجح
training	تدريب	pollution	تلوث	harmful (adj.)	ضار
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	water bodies	مجارى مائية	crabs	كابوريا
habitats	أماكن المعيشة	causes	أسباب	wastewater	مياه الصرف
sink	حوض	toilet	دورة المياه (الحمام)	shower	الاستحمام
factories	مصانع	agricultural (adj.)	زراعي	effects	نتائج / آثار
wildlife	الحياة البرية	solutions	حلول	garbage	قمامة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
carry	يحمل	carried	يتدرب
compete	ينافس	competed	يسبب
harm	يؤذي	harmed	يوفر
avoid	يتجنب	avoided	يدمر
		practice	practiced
		cause	caused
		save	saved
		destroy	destroyed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
begin	يبدأ	began	win
become	يصبح	became	lose
throw	يرمي	threw	take
			won
			lost
			took

Expressions and Phrases

Tokyo Olympic Games	دورة الألعاب الأولمبية في طوكيو	was born on (day) ...	وُلد في (اليوم)...
at the age of ...	في عمر الـ ...	Rio Olympics	أولمبياد ريو
special needs	احتياجات خاصة	compete against	ينافس ضد
special moment	لحظة خاصة	famous for	مشهور بـ....
Moreover / As well as this ...	بالإضافة إلى ذلك	old people	كبار السن
as much as possible	بقدر المستطاع	Paralympic champion	بطل بطولة دورة ألعاب ذوي الهمم والمعاقين

Take care!

(Olympics) هي دورة الألعاب الأولمبية للرياضيين العاديين

(Paralympics) هي دورة الألعاب الأولمبية للرياضيين المعاقين ومن ذوي الهمم

(home) قد تأتي بمعنى موطن/بيئة

Important sentences - جمل هامة

- * Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. هداية ملاك لاعبة تايكوندو مصرية مشهورة.
- * She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven. بدأت ممارسة التايكوندو في سن السابعة.
- * She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics. حصلت على الميدالية البرونزية في أولمبياد ريو.
- * Hedaya is also a very kind person. هداية هي أيضًا شخص لطيف جدًا.
- * She wants to win a gold medal. تريد الفوز بميدالية ذهبية.

Do it

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 He likes sports, he is a/an (student - athlete - worker - teacher).
- 2 I put the (chemicals - crabs - garbage - wastewater) in the bin.
- 3 One of the (causes - effects - solutions - prizes) of dirty water is making people ill.
- 4 Wastewater (causes - competes - destroys - avoids) water pollution.
- 5 (Garbage - Wastewater - Chemicals - Organisms) are all the living things in the water.
- 6 (Successful - Harmful - Amazing - Agricultural) means to make someone hurt.



Writing

A Sports Biography سيرة ذاتية رياضية



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Who is she? من هي؟

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. This is amazing.



Why is she important? لماذا هي مهمة؟

Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.

ولدت هداية في ٢١ أبريل سنة ١٩٩٣. بدأت في ممارسة التايكوندو في سن السابعة من عمرها، وأحسبت إلى بطلان في مصر في منطقة غمرق من عمرها. فازت بالفضة في بطولة أمريكا في عام ٢٠١٦. وفازت بالفضة في بطولة العالم في عام ٢٠٢١.

Who did she help in 2016? من الذي ساعدته في عام 2016؟

Hedaya is a very kind person. In 2016 she helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs, Raja Garmash. Raja had no one to compete against, so Hedaya became her competitor and lost. Raja could therefore win the gold medal and it was a very special moment for her.

هي شخص شديداً، تساعد شخصاً ومحبها. بدأت في عام ٢٠١٦، حيث ساعدت رياضي مع احتياجات خاصة، راجا غمرق. راجا لم يكن لديه من ينافسها، لذلك أصبحت منافستها وخسرت. راجا كان يمكنه الفوز بالذهبية، وكان ذلك لحظة خاصة جداً.

What does she want for her future? ماذا تريد لمستقبلها؟

What does Hedaya do now? She is practicing hard. She really wants to win a gold medal!

Choose the correct answer:

- Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian (karate - judo - taekwondo - judo) player.
- Hedaya is a very (bad - kind - sad - unlucky) person.
- Hedaya won the (gold - silver - bronze - iron) medal in Tokyo in 2021.
- Hedaya helped a/an (French - English - American - Moroccan) athlete to win a gold medal.



3. Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

How to write a sports biography

Introduce the person, giving their name.

قدم الشخص مع ذكر اسمه واسمها.

Say why they are famous and give details about their sport.

قل سبب شهرتهم وقدم تفاصيل عن رياضتهم.

Give more details about their success and why they are interesting or important.

قدم مزيداً من التفاصيل حول نجاحهم واعد هم مثيرون للاهتمام ومهمون.

Say what you think could happen next for their career.

قل ما تعتقد انه يمكن ان يحدث بعد ذلك في حياتهم المهنية.

... phrases for a sports biography. Use the following phrases to help you.

He/She	He/She	He/She	He/She	He/She	He/She is also ...
was born	began ...	was the	was/is	won ...	/ Moreover /
on ...		first ...	successful		As well as this,
			because ...		he/she is ...

e.g.

... biography of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"Mohamed Salah"

(Why is he important? - What does he do now?)



Project

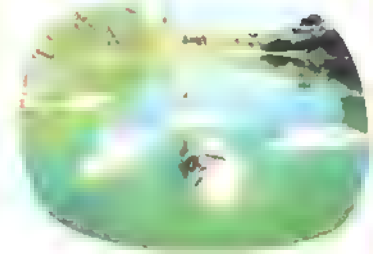
مدينة أقل تلوثًا A less polluted city

Water pollution تلوث المياه

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution.

Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish.

Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.



تأثيرات تلوث المياه هي ضارة جداً: سموم وتغيير في بيئاتها. تلوث المياه يمكن أن يقتل الكائنات الحية التي تعيش في المياه، مثل الأسماك، الطيور، والسرطان. كما يمكن أن يقتل الطيور التي تأكل الأسماك. تلوث المياه يمكن أن يجعل الحيوانات تفقد بيئاتها وتغير بيئاتها.

Causes الأسباب

- Wastewater from sinks, toilets, and showers.

مياه الصرف من أحواض و المراحيض والاستحمام

- Wastewater and chemicals from factories.

- Wastewater from agricultural land and cities into rivers.

مياه الصرف من الأراضي الزراعية والمدن إلى الأنهار



Effects التأثيرات

- Dirty water can make children and old people ill.

المياه القذرة يمكن أن تجعل الأطفال وكبار السن مرضى.

- Polluted water destroys wildlife in rivers.



السموم

Solutions الحلول

- Save as much water as possible.

وفر كم قدر ممكن من الماء.

- Take shorter showers.

استحم لفترة قصيرة.

- Avoid running water.

تجنب المياه الجارية.

- Never throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

لا ترمي النفايات في بحيرة أو بالقرب من شاطئ.



How can water pollution harm animals?

How can we make our cities less polluted?





1

1 Water is a very dangerous problem.

- a) pollution b) wheel c) sport d) sand

When harmful go into water, we call this water pollution.

- a) birds b) animals c) chemicals d) insects

3 can kill organisms.

- a) Fresh water b) Water pollution c) Fresh air d) Plants

4 Polluted water destroys wildlife in

- a) rivers b) homes c) mountains d) deserts

5 throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

- a) Never b) Always c) Sometimes d) Usually

6 as much water as possible.

- a) Lose b) Save c) Throw d) Waste

7 My brother won a prize the age of 15.

- a) of b) at c) on d) in

8 She is good at sports. She's a famous

- a) athlete b) doctor c) teacher d) vet

2

famous – born – taekwondo – flag – medal

Hedaya Malak is a(1)..... taekwondo player. She was(2)..... on April 21, 1993. She carried the Egyptian(3)..... at the Tokyo Games in 2021. She began practicing at the age of seven. She won a bronze(4)..... in 2016 and 2021.

3

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. Water pollution can kill organisms that live in the water such as fish, birds, and carbs. It can also kill birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats. We should save as much water as possible. We shouldn't throw garbage in or near a lake or beach.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about pollution.
a) land b) water c) noise d) air
- 2 The underlined word "garbage" means
a) cities b) boxes c) paper d) trash

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What are water bodies?

What can polluted water kill?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

a famous – player – Megawati – Egyptian – taekwondo – is.

2 water – ill – Dirty – children – make – can.

3 work – to stop – We – hard – pollution – must.

المسئولية : إدارة سروس الليان 2024

destroys – Polluted – wildlife – rivers – in – water.

المسئولية : إدارة سروس الليان 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

1 What does hedaya do now

2 Hedaya was born on april 21, 1993

6 Write a paragraph of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"Hedaya Malak"

المسئولية : إدارة سروس الليان 2024

مجاب عنه
صفحة
307

- Who is she? – Why is she important?
- What does she want for her future?

Unit 2

REVIEW



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

kung fu	كونغ فو	tennis	تنس
sailing	الإبحار	swimming	السباحة
squash	الإسكواش	karate	كاراتيه
football	كرة القدم	handball	كرة اليد
toxic	سام	emissions	عوادم
shade	ظل	nightmare	كابوس
greenhouse	صوبة زراعية	breathe	يتنفس
awful	فظيح	dream	حلم

Lesson (2)

climb trees	يتسلق الأشجار	cook	يطبخ
do jigsaws	يحل الصور المتقطعة	walk across the desert	يمشي عبر الصحراء
write poems	يكتب قصائد	help in the kitchen	يساعد في المطبخ
make cakes	يصنع الكعك	do math	يحل المسائل الحسابية
French	اللغة الفرنسية	Arabic	اللغة العربية

Lesson (3)

football pitch	ملعب كرة القدم	tennis court	ملعب التنس
swimming pool	حمام السباحة	karate suit	بدلة الكاراتيه
football boots	أحذية كرة القدم	squash rackets	مضارب الإسكواش
swimming goggles	نظارات السباحة	high kicks	ركلات عالية
moves	حركات	awesome	رائع
pain	ألم	light	ضوء
cone	محروط	cube	مكعب

Lessons (4 & 5)

biography	السيرة الذاتية	taekwondo	رياضة التايكوندو
athlete	لاعب رياضي	competitor	منافس
flag	علم	bronze	برونزية
medal	ميدالية	harmful	ضار
gold	ذهبي	organisms	الكائنات الحية
prize	جائزة	habitats	أماكن المعيشة
chemicals	مواد كيميائية	pollution	تلوث

Language Focus

great/ good/ bad + at

Form

Subject (شخص) + (am/is/are) + **great at/ good at/ bad at** + inf. (فعل في المصدر) + ing



I'm very **good at** drawing.



He is very **bad at** making cakes.

Subject (شخص) + (am/is/are) + **great at/ good at/ bad at** + noun (اسم)

I'm **great at** handball.



She is very **bad at** football.



Unit 2

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

إسكواش	تنس
رياضات	كاراتيه
كرة القدم	رائع
إبحار	كونغ فو
مصاراة	كرة يد

Lesson 2

يحل الصور المتقطعة	يمشي عبر الصحراء
يتسلق الأشجار	يطبخ
يصنع الكعك	يحل المسائل الحسابية
يكتب قصائد	يساعد في المطبخ

Lesson 3

مضارب الإسكواش	ملعب كرة القدم
نظارات السباحة	بدلة الكاراتيه
حمام السباحة	ملعب تنس
أحذية كرة القدم	ركلات
فردة جورب (شراب)	رجل
محروط	ضوء
ألم	قبعة

Lessons 4 5 6

السيرة الذاتية	رياضة التايكوندو
رياضي	منافس
علم	ميدالية
ذهب	الكائنات الحية
تلوث	برونزية
ضار	مواد كيميائية
مجارٍ مائية	مياه الصرف
بيئات	قمامة



WRITING TIME

نجميعة لأهم
موضوعات
الوحدة

لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about your favorite sport:

- 1 My favorite sport is (اللعبة)
- 2 I play (اللعبة) + (عدد المرات)
- 3 I play it in/on (المكان)
- 4 I use (أداة)
- 5 I am good at (اللعبة) because (السبب)
- 6 My favorite player is (اسم اللاعب)

My favorite sport

My favorite sport is squash. I play squash three times a week. I play it on a small court with walls all around. I use a small racket to hit the ball. I am good at squash because I can move fast. I love watching squash matches on TV. My favorite player is Nour El Sherbini.

How to write about sports places and equipment:

- 1 I like + (.....)
- 2 I wear + (اسم الملابس المخصصة للرياضة)
- 3 I play it in/on + (المكان المخصص للرياضة)

"Sports places and equipment"

I like swimming. I wear swimming goggles to protect my eyes. I always go to the swimming pool on Saturdays. My brother is good at playing football. He wears his football boots to play with his team. He plays on the football pitch.

How to write a sports biography:

- 1 (اسم اللاعب) is (تفاصيل)
- 2 He/She was born on (تاريخ الميلاد)
- 3 He/She won (.....)
- 4 He/She is (.....)
- 5 He/She wants to (.....)

A sports biography

Hedaya Malak is an Egyptian taekwondo player. Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She won a bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021. She is a very kind person. She helped a Moroccan athlete with special needs to win the gold medal. She really wants to win a gold medal!

• يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التي وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Complete the sentences:

- 1 I'm good at (play) football.
- 2 My sister is very good at (write) poems.
- 3 Sami's bad at (speak) French!
- 4 They're great at (help) their mom in the kitchen.

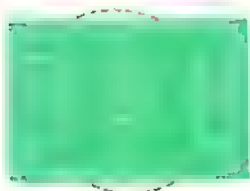
2 Match the words to their meanings:

- A**
- 1 toxic
 - 2 emissions
 - 3 shade
 - 4 nightmare
 - 5 greenhouse
 - 6 breathe

- B**
- a. () a bad dream
 - b. () to move air into and out of your lungs
 - c. () gases from cars or factories
 - d. () an area which the light of the sun can't reach
 - e. () very bad to eat or breathe
 - f. () a glass building used for growing plants

3 Look and write:

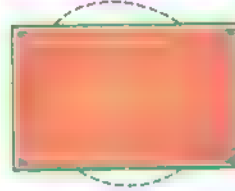
boots – court – tennis – goggles – karate – pitch – pool – rackets



football



..... suit



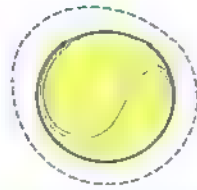
tennis



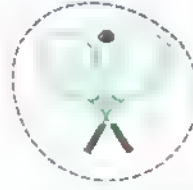
swimming



football



..... ball



squash



swimming



Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



6

Hedaya was born on 21, 1993.

- a) March b) April c) May d) June

She began practicing taekwondo at the age of

- a) 5 b) 6 c) 7 d) 8

3 She won many prizes at the age of

- a) 4 b) 40 c) 44 d) 14

She won the medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016.

- a) gold b) silver c) bronze d) wood



Reading



4

1 The nightmare is a very bad

- a) dream b) name c) person d) drink

2 Water pollution is very

- a) useful b) good c) harmful d) helpful

3 I'm so hot! Let's go and sit in the of that tree.

- a) sun b) shade c) bed d) beach

4 I wear my goggles to go

- a) swimming b) running c) squash d) kung fu



like – beach – strong – swimming – goggles

4

Doing sports is very useful to our bodies. Sports make us(1)..... and healthy. My favorite sport is(2)..... I began to learn swimming when I was seven. I love going to the(3)..... and swim in the sea. I wear my swimming(4)..... and train every day in the swimming pool near my house. Being in a swimming pool and doing this sport is the best thing for me.



6

Hello, I'm Heba. I'm good at cooking and making cakes. I'm bad at playing sports. Ali is my brother. He is eleven years old. He is good at playing tennis, but he is bad at helping me in the kitchen. My sister's name is Soha, she is eight years old. She is good at doing math. She is bad at tidying her room. Mazin and Reem are my cousins. Reem is good at drawing. She likes cats. Mazin likes monkeys. Monkeys are good at climbing trees.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
a) Heba and her family b) playing sports
c) cats and monkeys d) cooking in the kitchen
- 2 is good at drawing.
a) Reem b) Mazin c) Heba d) Ali

Answer the following questions:

3 How old is Ali?

.....

What animal does Mazin like?

.....



Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

1 a gold – Hedaya – wants – medal – win – to.

لشقيقة - إدارة ديوب نجدة 2024

2 do – time – you – to – What – want – play?

لشقيقة - إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

1 I'm very good at (play) tennis.

لإسماعيلة 2024

2 What sport (be) you bad at?

Punctuate the following:

1

i practice tennis a lot in the summer

لشقيقة - إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Water pollution"

- What causes water pollution?
- Why is water pollution dangerous?

لشقيقة - إدارة غرب المنصورة 2024

.....

.....

.....



Answer your questions
★★★★★

Practicing English
Practice more

Score: 64
Practice more

Score: 65
Practice more

Score: 85
Well done!

تحتوي هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Choose the correct answer.

1 Marwan is (bad – worse – good) at tennis.

Marwan goes to the (school – park – club) to play tennis.

3 Marwan is bad at (football – handball – tennis).

2 Choose the correct answer.

I'm good at playing table tennis (and – but – because) I can run fast.

When you play squash, you hit the ball with a small (pick – bag – racket).

1 Reem is (good – bad – great) at drawing. She doesn't like it.

4 She's good at (write – wrote – writing) poems.

5 In (tennis – handball – kung fu), we do high kicks.

3 Choose the correct answer.

are – sailing – My – and – swimming – favorites.

at – What – you – sport – are – good?

good – Monkeys – trees – climbing – are – at.

writing – is – great – me – poems – at.

5 do – moves – lots of – I – different – can.

OCTOBER REVISION

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من المراجعة على محتوى شهر أكتوبر.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 We buy fresh vegetables at the
a) garden b) bank c) beach d) market
- 2 Ali is very He has a lot of money.
a) poor b) clever c) rich d) bad
- 3 Lions are kept in a at the zoo.
a) cage b) page c) bag d) coin
- 4 My mother the vegetables with the knife to make salad.
a) ships b) grabs c) chops d) buys
- 5 My uncle planted an apple tree in his
a) office b) library c) room d) garden
- 6 I like eating chocolate, but it is
a) fruits b) unhealthy c) sugar d) healthy
- 7 A: What's your favorite? B: I like chicken.
a) food b) drink c) juice d) sport
- 8 We would like to oranges.
a) eat b) sleep c) go d) play
- 9 Add rice to your to buy at the market.
a) shopping list b) school bag c) price d) fridge
- 10 My brother raises chickens. He fresh eggs every day.
a) chops b) collects c) grows d) were
- 11 Let's go to the pitch.
a) sailing b) swimming c) football d) karate
- 12 We use a to play squash.
a) racket b) suit c) boot d) pool
- 13 She is good at sports. She's a famous
a) athlete b) doctor c) teacher d) vet
- 14 A is a very big person.
a) little b) giant c) magic d) poor
- 15 Hedaya Malak won many important
a) words b) prizes c) courts d) suits

I love swimming. I always go to the swimming on Fridays.

- a) pitch b) court c) classroom d) pool

17 water can make children and old people ill.

- a) Dirty b) Clean c) Healthy d) Nice

18 He's very good at doing

- a) swimming b) football c) kung fu d) sailing

19 I wear football to play football.

- a) goggles b) sandals c) boots d) rackets

روية والملح 2020

A/An means all the animals, plants, and rocks in a place.

- a) river b) living c) ecosystem d) non-living

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

beans – man – market – poor – bought

A)

Jack and his mother were very(1)..... Jack went to the(2)..... to sell his cow. On his way, he met an old(3)..... who was selling beans. Jack wasn't interested in buying the beans, but Jack(4)..... the beans at last.

B)

garden – family – grows – market – mango

Ahmed lives in a big house with his(1)..... They have a big(2)..... where his grandpa(3)..... many fruits and vegetables. Ahmed's favorite fruit is mango. He likes chocolate, too. He collects fresh eggs and sells them at the(4).....

C)

fast – court – slow – healthy – racket

Squash is a fun and exciting sport. People play squash on a small(1)..... with walls all around. Squash players use a small(2)..... and a small ball. They move very(3)..... They can get really hot. Squash can help you stay(4)..... You can play it with a friend, too.

D)

flag – medal – famous – gold – kind

Hedaya Malak is a(1)..... Egyptian taekwondo player. She carried the Egyptian(2)..... at Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She won the bronze(3)..... at Rio Olympics in 2016. She is a very kind person. Now, she is practicing hard because she wants to win a(4)..... medal.

3

- Do you have (some) carrots, please?
- Would you like..... (a) apples?
- We haven't got (some) grapes.
- 4 Would you like (any) tea?
- 5 I would like (some) orange, please.
- 6 There aren't (some) mangoes in the fridge.
- 7 Have you got (some) cheese?
- 8 I don't have(some) book in my bag?
- 9 I would like(some) apple, please.
- 10 Are there (some) tomatoes?
- 11 She (be) good at writing poems.
- 12 They (be) great at swimming.
- 13 I'm very good (for) playing squash.
- 14 Samy is bad at (speak) French.
- 15 They are good at (play) squash.
- 16 How about (play) volleyball, Mona?
- 17 I am good at (draw) pictures.
- 18 I can't come with you (but) I'm sick.
- 19 He is good at..... (make) fruit salad.
- 20 Ali is good (in) Arabic.

4

Punctuate the following.

1 my favorite food is rice

2 mangoes grow in egypt.

what dishes can you make with apples

is there any rice

3

Unit

3

How do I look?

كيف أبدو؟



Unit Overview

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

listen, read, research, and write about different types of clothes.

listen to a conversation about packing for a vacation.

practice using the infinitive of purpose.

read a traditional folktale.

learn how to say past simple endings /d/, /t/, and /id/.

multiply multi-digit numbers.

write a description of favorite clothes using adjectives.

research and make a leaflet about traditional clothes from around the world.

تعبير عن الغرض.

قالت.

تعليم كيف تقول لأختك اسم شهر، أو أ، ب، ج، د، هـ، و، ز، ح، ط، ي، في زمن الماضي بسيط.

توم نعلمه يصرف بالأرقام متعددة الجوانب.

Did you know?

Cotton grows in the Nile Delta. Many people believe that Egyptian cotton is the best cotton in the world

Find out!

Cotton grows so well in Egypt because of Egypt's *fertile soil and *moderate climate.

*fertile

خصبة

*moderate

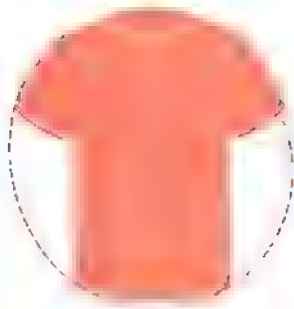
معتدل



Al Fayoum



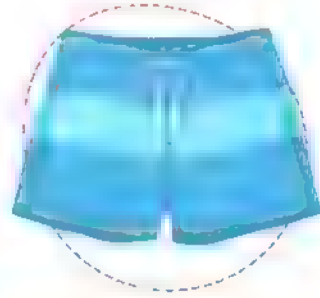
Main vocabulary



T-shirt



sunglasses



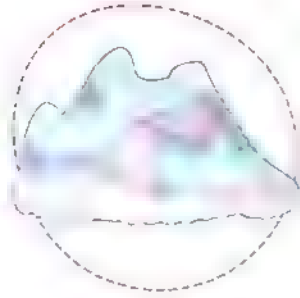
swimming shorts



scarf



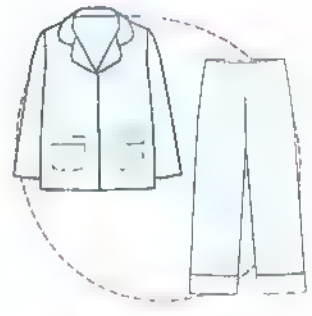
sweater



sneakers



necklace



pajamas



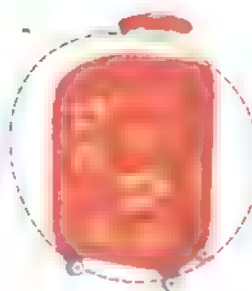
spotted

مخطط



striped

مخطط



suitcase

حقيبة سفر



coat

معطف



galabeya

حلابية

Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (tt) في كلمة (spotted) ينطقان كحرف واحد.

لاحظ أن حرف الـ (c) ينطق /s/ (س) إذا أتى بعده (e) كما في (necklace).

Extra vocabulary

trip	رحلة	Al Fayoum	محافظة الفيوم	holiday	إجازة
exciting	مثير / شيق	excited	متشوق / متحمس	lovely	رائع
sunny (adj.)	مشمس	cool (adj.)	بارد	pool	حمام سباحة
comfortable	مريح	gold	ذهبي (اللون)	stripes	خطوط
uniform	زي موحد	pearl	لؤلؤة	natural	طبيعي

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
pack	يحرر الحقائق أو الأمتعة	remember	يتذكر

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
know	يعرف	wear	يرتدى

Expressions and Phrases

I can't wait	لا أطيق (أتحمل) الانتظار	of course	بالتأكيد / بالطبع	for ages	منذ زمن طويل
come on	هيا بنا	in the evenings	في أوقات المساء	walk around	يتجول
on your feet	في قدميك	What else ...?	ماذا أيضا ...؟	man-made	من صنع الإنسان

Take care!

- تستخدم الصفة المنتهية بـ (ed) مثل كلمة "excited" لوصف ما يشعر به الشخص.

e.g. I'm **excited** to see them, too.

- تستخدم الصفة المنتهية بـ (ing) مثل كلمة "exciting" لوصف الشخص أو الشيء الذي يسبب الشعور.

e.g. Our holiday to Al Fayoum is so **exciting**.

Choose the correct answer:

- I wear my (scarf – goggles – sunglasses – T-shirt) to protect my eyes from the sun.
- I put on my blue (sweater – necklace – pajamas – swimming shorts) when I go to bed.
- I always run in my comfortable (scarf – sneakers – coat – sunglasses).
- I always wear a (coat – swimming shorts – T-shirt – necklace) in winter.
- I bought a new (goggles – pajamas – necklace – sweater) to wear around my neck.
- It's cold in the evenings. You should take your (shorts – shirt – necklace – sweater).



What are Mom and Asser doing?

ماذا تفعل ماما وأسر؟



Mom

Asser, we need to pack our suitcases for our holiday tomorrow.

سر، نحتاج أن نجمع حقائبنا من أجل عطلتنا غدًا.



It's so exciting! I can't wait to go to Al Fayoum to see Uncle Hatem and Aunt Malak. And, of course, Faris and Dina.

هذا ممتع جدًا! لا أطيق الانتظار بذهاب أسى إلى الفيوم لرؤية العم حاتم وعمته منة. وبالتفصيل، فريس ودينا.

Asser



Mom

I know. I'm excited to see them, too. We haven't seen them for ages! But come on, we need to pack!

أنا أعرف، أنا متحمسة لرؤيتهم غدًا. لم نرهم منذ زمن طويل. لكن هيا بنا، نحن بحاجة أن نجمع حقائبنا.

Asser



OK, I need to pack my green T-shirt and my swimming shorts because they have a lovely pool, don't they?

حسنا، أريد أن أجمع قميصي الأخضر وقصاتي السباحة لأن لديهم حمام سباحة جميلًا، أليس كذلك؟



Mom

Yes, and remember your sunglasses. It will be very sunny.

نعم، وتذكر نظاراتك الشمسية. سيكون الجو مشمسًا جدًا.

Asser



Will I need a coat and a scarf?

هل سأحتاج إلى معطف ووشاح؟



Mom

No, Asser, you won't. But you should pack a sweater. It can be cool in the evenings.

لا بأس. أنت لن تكون بارد. لكن يجب عليك أن تلبس سويتير. قد يكون بارد في المساء.

Asser



OK. I'll pack my blue sweater. That's my favorite.

نعم. سأحزم قميصي الأزرق. هذا هو المفضل لدي.



Mom

You'll need your sneakers because we'll be walking around a lot and you need to wear something comfortable on your feet.

سوف تحتاج حذاءك الرياضي لأننا سنمشي كثيراً. ولأنك تحتاج أن ترتدي شيئاً مريحاً على قدميك.

Asser



What about my best galabeya? Will I need the one that Grandma gave me?

ماذا عن قميصي المفضل؟ هل سأحتاج إلى ذلك؟ تعاليم لي أعطتها لي الجدّة.



Mom

No, you won't. But I will take my gold necklace.

لا بأس. أنت لن تحتاجها. لكنني سأأخذ قلبي الذهبية.

Asser



Hmm. OK. What else do I need? Oh, I know! My pajamas! I'll take the ones with the stripes. They're really cool!

همم. نعم. ماذا أحتاج أيضاً؟ أه، أنا أعرف! بيجامتي! سأأخذ تلك التي بها خطوط. إنها حقاً رائعة.

Important sentences: جملات هامة

- * Asser and his mom are packing their suitcases for a holiday to Al Fayoum tomorrow.
أسر ووالدته يحزمان حقائبهما لقضاء عطلة في الفيوم غداً.
- * Asser is packing his sunglasses because it will be very sunny.
يحزم أسر نظارته الشمسية لأن الجو سيكون مشمساً جداً.
- * Asser is packing a sweater because it can be cool in the evenings.
يحزم أسر قميصاً صوفياً لأن الطقس يمكن أن يكون بارداً في المساء.
- * Asser is packing his sneakers because he will be walking around a lot.
يقوم أسر بتجهيز حذاءه الرياضي لأنه سوف يتجول كثيراً.
- * Mom is packing her gold necklace.
ماما تحزم عقدتها الذهبية.



Listening script page 39 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.

Youssef went to the shopping mall. He bought some striped pajamas.

ذهب يوسف إلى مركز التسوق. اشترى بعض ملابس مخططة.



Nesma went to the park. She took a spotted umbrella.

ذهبت نسمة إلى حديقة. أخذت مظلة مخططة.



Amira went to school. She wore her striped uniform.

ذهبت أميرة إلى المدرسة. لبست زيها المدرسي المخطط.



Wael played in the rain. He wore a coat and a spotted scarf.

لعب وائل تحت المطر. ارتدى معطف ووشاح مخطط.



Language Functions

1 To express necessity:

التعبير عن الضرورة:

I/ We/ They/ You + need to + (inf) He/ She/ It + needs to + (inf)

e.g. We need to pack our suitcases. He needs to pack his sweater.

2 To give advice:

إعطاء نصيحة:

Subject + should + (inf.)

e.g. You should pack a sweater.



Find out!

Pearls come from a living sea creature called the oyster. There're two general types of pearls: natural and man-made.

تأتي اللؤلؤ من كائن بحري حي يسمى المحار. هناك نوعان من اللؤلؤ: لؤلؤ طبيعي ولؤلؤ صناعي.





1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.



(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Mariam will travel to
 a) Luxor b) Aswan c) Alexandria d) Al Fayoum
- 2 Mariam will pack her T-shirt.
 a) blue b) green c) red d) black
- 3 Soha needs to pack her because it will be very sunny.
 a) sweater b) hat c) sunglasses d) T-shirt
- 4 Mariam will pack a sweater because it can be in the evenings.
 a) cool b) warm c) hot d) sunny

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 I wear my swimming in the pool.
 a) T-shirt b) sunglasses c) shorts d) hat
- 2 I walk around a lot. I need comfortable
 a) scarfs b) necklaces c) sneakers d) coats
- 3 When you go on holiday, remember to your suitcases.
 a) pick b) pack c) back d) peak
- 4 It's very sunny. I need my
 a) sunglasses b) scarf c) pajamas d) sweater
- 5 When it rains, I take my
 a) shorts b) umbrella c) sunglasses d) T-shirt
- 6 I wear a because it's hot.
 a) shirt b) sweater c) coat d) jacket

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

back – pack – excited – shorts – sunglasses

I am Soha. I'm going to travel to Alexandria for a holiday with my family next week. We are very(1)..... We need to(2)..... our suitcases. My brother Hany needs to pack his swimming(3)..... to swim in the sea. I will take my(4)..... because it will be sunny. It will be a nice holiday.

Youssef, Nesma, and Wael are friends. They are the same age. They will visit Al Fayoum next Friday. They are very excited to go there. They need to pack their suitcases for the holiday. Youssef will need his sneakers because they will walk around a lot, and he needs to wear something comfortable on his feet. Nesma will pack her sunglasses because it will be very sunny there. Wael will pack his swimming shorts because he wants to go swimming there.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The underlined word "excited" means
 a) angry b) sad c) happy d) hungry
- 2 It will be sunny in Al Fayoum, so Nesma will pack her
 a) necklace b) sunglasses c) pajamas d) skirt

Answer the following questions:

- 3 When will the friends visit Al Fayoum?

- 4 Why does Youssef want to pack his sneakers?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- 1 need – We – our suitcases – pack – to.

- 2 the stripes – take – with – I – the pajamas.

- 3 should – You – sneakers – comfortable – pack – your.

- 4 need – and – W – a coat – I – a scarf?

Punctuate the following:

- 1 i can't wait to go to cairo tomorrow.

- 2 I ll pack my blue sweater



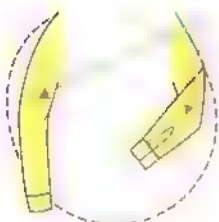
My favorite clothes ملابس المفضلة



1. Listen, point, and say



Main vocabulary



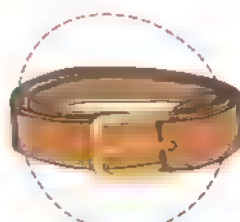
sleeves

أكمام



pockets

جيوب



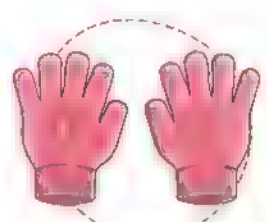
belt

حزام



crown

تاج



gloves

Extra vocabulary

social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	Egyptian clothing	ملابس مصرية	information	معلومات
traditional (adj.)	تقليدي	robe	رداء (ثوب)	popular (adj.)	شعبي / مشهور
cotton	قطن	sunburned (adj.)	مصاب بحروق الشمس	hidden (adj.)	مخفي
festival	مهرجان / عيد	colorful (adj.)	ملون	patterns	أنماط (أشكال)
useful (adj.)	مفيد / نافع	striped (adj.)	مخطط	spotted (adj.)	منقط
costume	زي	princess	أميرة	wedding	حفل زفاف
suit	بدلة	hall	صالة	essay	مقال
warm (adj.)	دافئ	grades	درجات	library	مكتبة
cardboard	ورق مقوى	poster	ملصق	internet	إنترنت

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
celebrate	يحتفل / celebrated	borrow	يستعير / borrowed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
wear	يرتدي / wore	hide	يختبئ / hid

Expressions and Phrases

do a school project	يقوم بمشروع مدرسي	made from	مصنوع من	get sunburned	يُصاب بحروق الشمس
from the outside	من الخارج	for example	على سبيل المثال	ask for help	يطلب المساعدة
look like	يبدو وكأنه	catch the train	يلحق بالقطار	correct homework	يصحح الواجبات



2 Listen, read, and role play.

السمع، امرا وبدل الأدوار.



Thomas

Hi, Fares. Can you help me? I'm doing a school project about Egyptian clothing. Can you give me some information?

مرحبًا فارس. هل بإمكانك مساعدتي؟ أقوم بعمل مشروع مدرسي عن الملابس المصرية. هل تستطيع أن تعطيني بعض المعلومات؟



Fares

Hi, Thomas. Yes, of course. What do you want to know?

مرحبًا توماس. نعم بالطبع. ماذا تريد أن تعرف؟



Thomas

Well, what do you usually wear?

حسنًا، ماذا يرتدي عادة؟



Fares

I live in Sohag and it's usually very hot here. Today, I'm wearing shorts and a T-shirt.

أعيش في سوهاج وعادة ما يكون الجو حارًا جدًا هنا. اليوم، أنا أرتدي شورتًا وتشرتًا.



Thomas

Cool! Can you tell me about some traditional Egyptian clothes?



Fares

Oh, sure. Well, many men wear the galabeya. This is the long white robe that is very popular.

بالطبع. حسنًا يرتدي الكثير من الرجال الجلابية. هذا هو الرداء الأبيض الطويل وهو مشهور جدًا.



Thomas

Yes, I've seen it. It looks really cool to wear.

Yes, it's cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors too. The sleeves are long so we don't get sunburned!

هذا صحيح، إنه رائع لأنه مصنوع من القطن. عادة ما يكون أبيض، لكن يمكنك الحصول عليه بألوان أخرى أيضًا. الأكمام طويلة كي لا تتعرض لحروق الشمس!

Fares



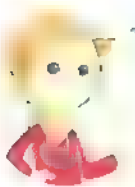
Thomas

Are there pockets?

Yes! But they're hidden – you can't see them from the outside.

نعم! لكنها مخفية - لا يمكنك رؤيتها من الخارج.

Fares



Thomas

Do you wear galabeyas when you're celebrating a special festival?

هل تلبس ملابس سبّاحية عند الاحتفال بهيولان خاص؟

We do, and the clothes we wear for Eid, for example, are very beautiful. They can be colorful. Sometimes there are beautiful patterns on them.

نعم، نرتديها، والملابس التي نرتديها في العيد على سبيل المثال جميلة جدًا. يمكن أن تكون ملونة. في بعض الأحيان هناك أشكال جميلة عليها.

Fares



Thanks, Fares. That's really useful!

شكرًا فارس، هذا صيد مفيد!



3. Look and read:

انظر وامرأ:

Listening script page 43 SB

هذا النص مأخوذ من كتاب دليل المعلم.



I bought a scarf and gloves to keep me warm.

اشترت شال وجوارب ليحافظوا عليّ دافئاً.



I went to town to buy a beautiful new dress for the party.

ذهبت في المدينة لشراء فستان جديد جميل للحفلة.



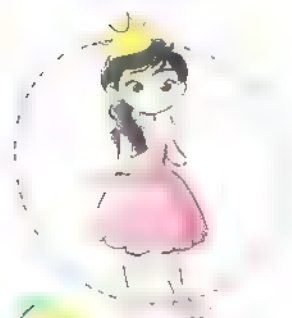
I got some cardboard paper to make my poster.



I searched the internet to find information for my homework.



Marwa is wearing a spotted dress with a belt. There are two pockets.



Reem is wearing a costume. She looks like a princess! She has a crown on her head. She has white gloves on her hands.

ماروا ترتدي فستاناً مخططاً بحزام. هناك جيبان. ريم ترتدي زيّاً. تبدو كأميرة! لديها تاج على رأسها. لديها قفازات بيضاء على يديها.



Language Focus

1. Infinitive of purpose صيغة المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

We use "to + infinitive" to express purpose, and to say why someone does something:

نستخدم الفعل في المصدر "to + infinitive" للتعبير عن الغرض، ولتوضيح سبب قيام شخص ما بشيء ما.

Form

... + to + infinitive (الفعل في المصدر)



She went to town to buy a dress.

ذهبت إلى المدينة لشراء فستان.



He bought new sneakers to wear for playing football.

اشترى حذاء رياضيًا جديدًا لأرتدائه للعب كرة القدم.



We use "Why" to ask about purpose.

نستخدم «لماذا» لسؤال عن الغرض.

A: Why did Nesma go to the kitchen?

B: Nesma went to the kitchen to make a cake.



Choose the correct answer:

- I went to the library (borrow – borrowed – to borrow – borrowing) a book. **SB**
- He wore swimming shorts (to – by – on – of) go swimming.
- Inji used a pen (to write – writing – write – wrote) her essay. **SB**
- She went to the bakery to (buy – bought – buying – buys) some bread.
- I bought sunglasses to (wears – wear – wore – wearing) on holiday.
- I bought a scarf (as – for – to – at) keep me warm.

2. The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

We use the past simple tense to express actions that started and ended in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث التي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

e.g. I visited my grandpa yesterday.

Affirmative Form

Subject (الفعل) + التصريف الثاني للفعل

1. Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (ed).

travel → traveled

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (y) يضاف لها (ied).

use → used

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + (y) ، يحذف حرف الـ (y) ويضاف (ied).

study → studied

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف متحرك + حرف ساكن، يضاف لها (ed) مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن.

stop → stopped

My dad traveled to London by plane last week.

2. Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
buy	bought	make	made	wear	wore
go	went	get	got	write	wrote
take	took	sleep	slept	leave	left
catch	caught	do	did	hide	hid

e.g. Eman bought a new dress yesterday.

Subject + didn't + (inf.) ... بكلمة لمحمد + الفعل في المصدر

e.g. Ola didn't finish her homework yesterday.

Yes/No questions

في حالة السؤال بـ «هل» في الماضي، نستخدم:

Question السؤال A Did + subject + (inf.) +? الفعل في المصدر

للإجابة نستخدم:

Answer الإجابة

B: Yes,
B: No,

Subject (الفعل)

did.
didn't.

e.g. A Did Tarek buy a racket?

B: Yes, he did.

B: No, he didn't.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Question السؤال **A: Wh- word** **(كلمة الاستفهام)** **and** **subject (inf)** **+?**

Answer الإجابة **B: Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل + ...**

e.g. **A** Why **did** the teacher **use** a red pen?

B: The teacher **used** a red pen to correct homework.

yesterday last ago in the past

Verb to "be" in the past simple

I/He/She/It/اسم مفرد + was/wasn't ... e.g. - She **was** ill yesterday.
- It **wasn't** a sunny day yesterday.

We/They/You /اسم جمع + were/weren't e.g. - We **were** at the supermarket last week.
- Ramy and Rana **weren't** happy yesterday.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 They (~~go~~ - ~~going~~ - ~~is going~~ - ~~went~~) to the library yesterday.
- 2 Asmaa (~~didn't~~ - ~~don't~~ - ~~srt~~ - ~~doesn't~~) sleep early last night.
- 3 They (~~are~~ - ~~was~~ - ~~were~~ - ~~do~~) at the park two hours ago.
- 4 A Did Inji (~~write~~ - ~~writes~~ - ~~wrote~~ - ~~writing~~) her essay? No, she didn't.
- 5 They (~~trave~~ - ~~trave ed~~ - ~~trave no~~ - ~~trave s~~) to London last year.
- 6 My father woke up at 7 and (~~catch~~ - ~~catches~~ - ~~caught~~ - ~~catching~~) the bus to work.
- 7 How (~~do~~ - ~~da~~ - ~~does~~ - ~~are~~) you get to the train station last night?
- 8 I went shopping two days (~~last~~ - ~~ago~~ - ~~next~~ - ~~soon~~).
- 9 The boy (~~is~~ - ~~was~~ - ~~are~~ - ~~be~~) in the garden two minutes ago.
- 10 I didn't (~~take~~ - ~~takes~~ - ~~took~~ - ~~taking~~) any photos at the park.

Practice



Lesson 2

• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 I've got a sweater. It's lined white and pink.
a) striped b) spotted c) dark d) sunburned
- 2 The galabeya is cool because it's made from
a) cotton b) paper c) plastic d) metal
- 3 The galabeya is a very long
a) robe b) shorts c) sweater d) T-shirt
- 4 The of galabeya are long.
a) sleeves b) belts c) boots d) buttons
- 5 are traditional Egyptian clothes.
a) Coats b) Galabeyas c) T-shirts d) Sweaters
- 6 She is a princess. She has a on her head.
a) dress b) gloves c) crown d) pocket
- 7 Rana is wearing on her hands.
a) glasses b) belts c) gloves d) skirts
- 8 Galabeyas have, but they are hidden.
a) gloves b) crowns c) pockets d) belts

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

women – cotton – hidden – men – sunburned

I'm doing a school project about Egyptian clothing. Many(1)..... wear the galabeya. It's made from(2)..... . It's usually white, but you can get other colors too. The sleeves are long, so we don't get(3).....! The pockets are(4)..... – you can't see them from the outside. We wear galabeya when we celebrate Eid.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1 a racket – Tarek – play – to – tennis – bought.

2 got – with – dress – I've – a striped – a belt.

3 usually – you – wear – do – What?

4 you – Da – play – video – games – yesterday?

1. Write the correct form of the words between brackets.

- 1 I (play) football yesterday.
- 2 I (go) to the cinema last week.
- 3 I go to the library to (reading) stories.
- 4 (What) did Tarek make a suit? To wear for a wedding.
- 5 She (doesn't) buy a dress yesterday.
- 6 Nayra left the party to (caught) the train.
- 7 Mayar made a cake to (celebrated).
- 8 She (isn't) at school yesterday.
- 9 We didn't (had) a vacation this year.
- 10 What did they (bought) at the supermarket?
- 11 She (goes) to do her homework yesterday.
- 12 I went to the market to (got) some rice.
- 13 We didn't (watched) the match yesterday.
- 14 My father (is) at the park yesterday.
- 15 Did Ahmed (saw) a film yesterday?

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 The clothes we wear for eid are very beautiful

are there any pockets

"My favorite clothes"

- What do you like to wear? - Why do you like these clothes?
- How is it?

.....

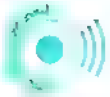
.....

.....

.....



Story



1. Listen and say:

استمع ومل:



Main vocabulary

kind (adj.)	طيب / عطوف	honest (adj.)	صادق / أمين	poor (adj.)	فقير
happy (adj.)	سعيد	tired (adj.)	متعب	beautiful (adj.)	جميل
amazing	مذهل	delicious	لذيذ	new (adj.)	جديد

Extra vocabulary

elves	أقزام	shoemaker	صانع الأحذية	kindness	الطيبة
money	مال	workshop	ورشة	wife	زوجة
enough (adj.)	كافي	leather	جلد	dear	عزيزي/عزيزتي
surprised	متفاجئ	dear	عزيزي / عزيزتي	the following (adj.)	التالي
meal	وجبة	around	حول	perfect (adj.)	مثالي
again	مرة أخرى	amazed (adj.)	مندهش/مذهول	little (adj.)	صغير الحجم

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
believe	يصدق / believed	call	ينادي / called
thank	يشكر / thanked	dance	يرقص / danced

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
pay	يدفع / paid	leave	يفادر / left
hide	يختبئ / hid	sit	يجلس / sat

Expressions and Phrases

once upon a time	ذات مرة / كان يا ما كان	work hard	يعمل بجد
one night	ذات ليلة	pair of	زوج من
walk into	يدخل	try on	يجرب (ملابس / حذاء)
for the night	لهذه الليلة	find out	يكتشف
all over the land	من جميع أنحاء البلاد	ever after	للأبد

The elves and the shoemaker الأقمقام وصانع الأحذية



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

Once upon a time, a kind and honest shoemaker lived in town with his wife. They were very poor, but they were happy. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money.

دات مرة، عاش صانع أحذية طيب وصادق في المدينة مع زوجته. كانا فقيرين جدًا، لكنهما كانا سعيدين. عمل صانع الأحذية بجد، لكن لم يكن لديه مال.



The middle

One night, the shoemaker was in his workshop. "Oh dear. I've only got enough leather for one more pair of shoes. But I'm too tired to make them tonight. I'll cut the leather now and make the shoes in the morning." The shoemaker cut out the leather and went to bed.

دات ليلة، كان صانع الأحذية في ورشته. "يا عزيزتي، لدي من الجلد ما يكفي فقط لزوج واحد من الأحذية. لكنني متعب جدًا! سأقطع الجلد الآن وأصنع الأحذية في الصباح." قطع صانع الأحذية الجلد وذهب إلى الفراش.



The following morning, the shoemaker couldn't believe his eyes. He called to his wife to come quickly to the workshop. "Look at these shoes!" said the shoemaker. There, on his table was an amazing pair of shoes. "They are beautiful. Did you make them?" His wife looked surprised. "No, my dear, I didn't make them," he said.

في اليوم التالي، لم يصدق صانع الأحذية عينيه. نادى زوجته بسرعة وجاءت إلى الورشة. "انظر إلى هذه الأحذية!" قال صانع الأحذية. هناك، على الطاولة، زوج من الأحذية مذهل. "إنهما جميلان جدًا. هل أنت التي صنعتهم؟" نظرت زوجته دهشة. "لا، يا عزيزتي، لم أضعهما."

Then a man walked into the shop. "I have never seen such amazing shoes," he said. "Can I try them?" He tried on the shoes. "They're perfect," he said and paid the shoemaker. "Quickly," said the shoemaker's wife, "go and buy some more leather." The shoemaker went to buy some more leather.

ثم دخل رجل إلى المتجر. "أنا لم أرى أبدًا أحذيةً رائعةً كهذه!" قال الرجل. "هل يمكنني تجربتها؟" جرب الرجل الأحذية. "إنها مثالية!" قال الرجل ودفع لصانع الأحذية. "سريعًا!" قالت زوجة صانع الأحذية: "هذه أحذية رائعة! اذهب واشتر المزيد من الجلد." ذهب صانع الأحذية لشراء المزيد من الجلد.

The end

When he arrived home, the shoemaker's wife had made him a delicious meal. "I will just cut out the leather, and then come and eat." The shoemaker cut out the leather for two pairs of shoes and left the workshop for the night.

The following morning, the shoemaker and his wife were amazed to see two beautiful pairs of shoes in the workshop. "We must find out who is making these shoes," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's hide tonight and see who is helping us."

في صباح اليوم التالي، كان الصانع وزوجته مذهولين لرؤية زوجين من الأحذية الجميلة في ورشة العمل. "نحن يجب أن نجد من هو الذي يصنع هذه الأحذية"، قال لصانع الأحذية. "دعونا نخفي الليلة ونرى من هو الذي يساعدنا."

That night, the shoemaker cut out the leather and then hid. They were very surprised to see two little elves! The elves started to make the shoes. Soon, they had made two more pairs of beautiful shoes. "We must thank the elves," said the shoemaker's wife. "Let's make them new clothes."

The next night, the elves found their new clothes. They were so happy that they danced around the workshop before sitting down to make more shoes.

Soon, people came from all over the land to buy the shoemaker's shoes. He and his wife weren't ever poor again and they lived happily ever after.

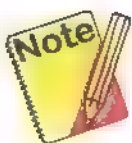
Choose the correct answer:

The shoemaker works in a (supermarket – mill – farm – workshop).

The shoemaker's wife made him a (beautiful – new – delicious – honest) meal.

The shoemaker was very surprised to see two little (leather – elves – trees – books).

4 He cut the (paper – wood – leather – cloth) to make shoes.



الصفات هي كلمات تصف الأشخاص أو الأشياء:

- قد تأتي قبل الاسم:

e.g. I've never seen such **amazing** shoes.

- قد تأتي بعد (Verb to do):

e.g. The shoemaker **was** very **poor**.



Pronunciation

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (ed) endings (-ed)



3 Listen, point, and say.

استمع، أشر، وقل.



/d/

تنطق /d/ إذا أتى آخر الفعل أحد
الأصوات الآتية:
/l/, /r/, /m/, /n/, /v/, /z/ sound

/t/

تنطق (ed) /t/ إذا أتى آخر الفعل
أحد الأصوات الآتية:
/f/, /s/, /k/, /p/, /tʃ/, /ʃ/

/Id/

تنطق (ed) /Id/ إذا أتى آخر الفعل
أحد الأصوات الآتية:
/d/, /t/

played

لعب

walked

مشى

tidied

مأ

cleaned

نظف

washed

غسل

needed

احتاج

lived

عاش

worked

عمل

studied

درّس

delivered

وصل

asked

سأل

counted

عد

enjoyed

استمتع

dressed

لبس

tasted

ذوّق

slowed

أبطأ

fixed

أصلح

waited

انتظر

carried

حمل

promised

وعد

wanted

إد



Multiply multi-digit numbers ضرب الأعداد متعددة الأرقام



What is a multi-digit number?

ما هو العدد متعدد الأرقام؟

A multi-digit number is a number that consists of two or more digits.

عدد متعدد الأرقام هو عدد يتكون من رقمين أو أكثر.

e.g.

10

34

433

$$10 \times 10 = 100$$

$$30 \times 20 = 600$$

$$50 \times 50 = 2500$$

$$38 \times 24 = 912$$

e.g. For sports day, Mrs Amal ordered 12 boxes of T-shirts for the students. Each box has 18 T-shirts.

How many T-shirts did Mrs Amal order?

The answer: $12 \times 18 = 216$ T-shirts



Did you know?

If you multiply any number by zero, the answer is zero!

إذا ضربنا أي عدد في صفر، فالجواب هو صفر!



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The shoemaker was and honest.
a) bad b) kind c) unkind d) amazing
- 2 The shoemaker cut out the to make shoes.
a) glass b) clothes c) leather d) plastic
- 3 little elves helped the shoemaker.
a) Two b) Three c) Four d) Five
- 4 The shoemaker gave new to the elves.
a) shoes b) bags c) clothes d) sweets

She worked hard today. She feels
a) poor b) tired c) honest d) amazing

People like Ali because he never tells lies. He is
a) beautiful b) new c) delicious d) honest

- 3 He is He has no money.
a) poor b) rich c) tall d) healthy

الجميزة - إدارة منشأة القناطر 2024

- 4 Breakfast, lunch, and dinner are
a) colors b) meals c) subjects d) sports
- 5 Yesterday, I my room.
a) tidied b) played c) walked d) lived
- 6 She a beautiful skirt at the party.
a) waited b) tasted c) counted d) dressed
- 7 He the flowers to the houses yesterday.
a) delivered b) studied c) wanted d) promised
- There was a cat on the road, so we down the car.
a) slowed b) promised c) dressed d) needed
- 9 I to the park.
a) needed b) lived c) walked d) delivered

leather – shoes – workshop – elves – buy

الإسماعيلية - إدارة الاسماعيلية 2024

My grandfather was a shoemaker. He had a (1) in the city. He made beautiful (2) A lot of people went to (3) their shoes from him. He was honest and he made shoes from the best (4)

A shoemaker and his wife were poor and only had one piece of leather to make one pair of shoes. The next morning, they found out that the pair of shoes were made. They sold them and bought more leather to make more shoes. He woke up again to find that more shoes were made. He and his wife hid to see who was making the shoes. They were very surprised to see two little elves. He and his wife weren't ever poor again, and they lived happily ever after.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The shoemaker needs to make shoes.
 a) wood b) leather c) cloth d) glass
- 2 The underlined word "pair" means
 a) one b) three c) two d) four

Answer the following questions:

- 3 How did the elves help the shoemaker?

Summarize the passage in two sentences.

1 I – my – Yesterday, – room – tidied.

every – shoes – Went – made – the – night?

الشرقية إدارة مينا القمح 2024

3 buy – and – Go – more – leather – some.

4 clothes – made – for – They – new – the elves.

3 Punctuate the following:

1 we must thank the elves

did you make the shoes



Writing



Main vocabulary

uniform	زى موحد	short-sleeved	قصير الأكمام	trousers	بطلون
pale	فاتح	tie	كرافتة (رابطة العنق)	stripes	خصوط
checked	كاروهات (دو مربعات)	smart	أنيق	vest	سترة (صديري)
Mexico	المكسيك	sombrero	قبعة مكسيكية	styles	أشكال

Extra vocabulary

really	حقاً	shirt	قميص	skirt	حبيبة
socks	جوارب	leather (adj.)	جلدي	sweater	قميص صوف
dark	غامق	light	فاتح	different	مختلف
shorts	شورت	T-shirt	تيشرت	linen	كُتُن
colorful	ملون	feasts	أعياد	celebrations	احتفالات
bright	لامع	gold	ذهب	silver	فضة

Expressions and Phrases

have to	يُضطر إلى	for when	عندما
for the party	من أجل الحفلة	traditional Mexican dresses	النسائين المكسيكية التقليدية

Important sentences

- * Boys and girls have different uniforms at school. الأولاد والبنات لديهم زى مختلف في المدرسة.
- * Boys have to wear a tie every day. يجب على الأولاد ارتداء ربطة عنق كل يوم.
- * Girls don't wear trousers but they wear a blue and white checked skirt. لا ترتدي الفتيات بناطيل ولكن يرتدين حبيبة بها كاروهات أبيض وأزرق.
- * We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. عينا جميعاً أن نرتدي جوارب بيضاء وأحذية جلدية سوداء.
- * When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests or jackets. عندما يكون الجو بارداً، نرتدي سترات أو جواكت زرقاء داكنة.



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Student A

I really like our school uniform. Everyone wears a short-sleeved white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue trousers. We all have to wear white socks and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue sweaters.



Student B

At school, I wear a pale blue shirt and dark blue trousers. We have to wear a tie every day. It's dark blue with light blue stripes on it. The girls in my school also wear a pale blue shirt, but they don't wear trousers. They wear a blue and white checked skirt. The girls don't have to wear a tie.



Student C

Our school uniform is really smart. We have to wear a white shirt with a red tie. We wear a dark gray skirt and a blue jacket.



Student D

The girls and boys have different uniforms at my school. The boys wear light green shorts and long green socks. We wear white shirts and we've got a dark red sweater for when it gets cold. My sister's uniform is different. She wears a blue skirt and a yellow T-shirt.



Student E

Our uniform is a dark blue skirt for the girls or dark blue shorts for the boys, a pale blue cotton shirt, white socks, and black shoes. When it's cold, we wear dark blue vests or jackets. I like my uniform!

باسمى بساط هو حصة زرقاء - كبة بفسات و سورت في عمو بلباسه. الفصل قصص

بحور بفساء، وحمراء سورت، بفسات بلباس

باسمى بلباس ليا



Language Focus

When we use adjectives, we put them into this order:

عندما نستخدم الصفات، نضعها في هذا الترتيب:

Adjective is a word that describes a noun.

الصفة هي كلمة تصف اسما.

1 size الحجم	2 age العمر	3 color اللون	4 material مادة
big	new	black	cotton
small	old	white	linen
tall		green	leather
short			

e.g. - She is wearing a **green cotton** dress.

- The boys wear **long green** socks.

Exercise

Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct order:

- The playroom has tables. (**plastic, small**)
- I bought a ring. (**silver, new**)
- The shoemaker made shoes. (**small, leather**)
- He had to wear an hat. (**old, orange**)

SB

SB



Project

ماذا تسمى القبعة المكسيكية؟ What is the Mexican hat called?

Clothes in Mexico



These girls are wearing traditional Mexican dresses. Look! They're very colorful. There are lots of colorful stripes on the dresses. Girls in Mexico wear dresses like these during feasts and celebrations.

يرتدي هؤلاء الفتيات اللواتي يمتدنه. إن تلك اللواتي ملونه جذ وبي
تعدد من السريط يرتدي لفتات في المكسيك فساتين مثل هذه
في لاسد والاحتفالات

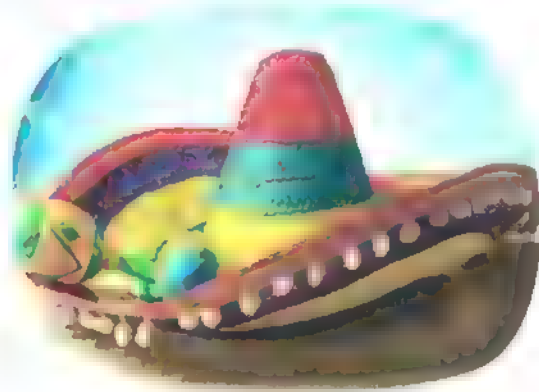


Mexican girls love bright colors. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear bright, colorful clothes.

تحب الفتيات في المكسيك لوان بوشة حب ورك لا تفتقن.
من ارتدي سلاسل بيضاء

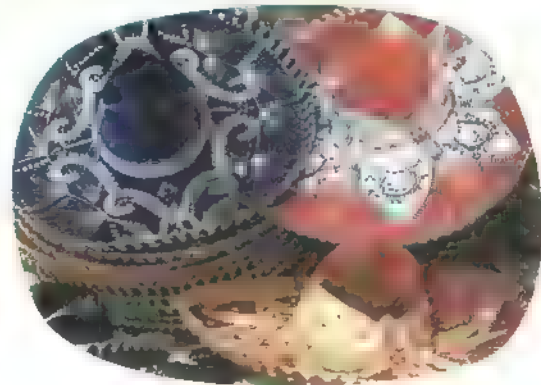
People in Mexico wear hats to protect their faces from the sun. This is a sombrero – it's a traditional Mexican hat.

الساس في المكسيك يرتدون شفتات بجملة وحوشهم من
لشمس هذه لشفة اجوعيررو: بها قبعة مكسيكية بفسيدته



There are lots of different styles of sombrero. Some have stripes, and some are very colorful. Some even have gold and silver on them.

يوجد العديد من شفتات (سومربرو) بعضها يحوي على خطوط،
والأخرى ملونه، والبعض منها عليه ذهب وفضة





1 My bag is made of

- a) wood b) glass c) leather d) metal

القاهرة - إدارة حدائق القبة - 2024

2 At school, boys wear blue

- a) dresses b) skirts c) trousers d) necklaces

3 Girls in Mexico wear traditional dresses.

- a) Egyptian b) Mexican c) British d) French

The sombrero is a traditional Mexican

- a) hat b) bag c) mat d) cat

الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر - 2024

5 My school is really smart to wear.

- a) playground b) uniform c) classroom d) books

6 My shoes are made of

- a) gold b) leather c) glass d) cotton

القاهرة - إدارة هليوبوليس - 2024

7 The girls wear a gray tie with pink

- a) spotted b) trousers c) striped d) stripes

8 Girls in Mexico wear traditional dresses during

- a) feasts b) work c) jobs d) classrooms

celebrations – faces – dresses – gold – colorful

الدقهلية - إدارة طلخا - 2024

Girls in Mexico are wearing traditional Mexican dresses. They're very (1) There are lots of colorful stripes on the (2) They wear these dresses during feasts and (3) Mexican girls love bright colors. People in Mexico wear hats to protect their (4) from the sun. It's a traditional Mexican hat.

My school uniform is very special and smart. The girls and boys have different uniforms at my school. The girls wear a long, dark blue skirt. They wear a pale green T-shirt. It is a short-sleeved cotton one. They don't wear a tie. The boys wear dark blue trousers and a green T-shirt. They have to wear a tie every day. It is striped green and blue. When it's cold, we wear a dark green jacket with pockets.

بور سعيد - 2024

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My school uniform is special and
a) smart b) tight c) small d) big
- 2 The boys wear dark trousers.
a) yellow b) green c) red d) blue

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do boys wear when it's cold?

What do the girls wear?

- 1 dress – got – I – a – have – striped.

القلوبية – إدارة الخائكة – 2024

- 2 favorite – What's – thing – your – wear – to?

wearing – Trousers – Mexican – dresses – are – girls.

الدقهلية – غرب المنصورة – 2024

are – Three – styles – sombrero – of – different.

The shoemaker made (.....) shoes.

الدقهلية – غرب المنصورة – 2024

- 2 I have a (leather, black) bag.

الشرقية – إدارة ديرب نجم – 2024

"My school uniform"

- When do you wear it? - What do you wear?
- How do you look in your uniform?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

T-shirt	تيشرت	sunglasses	نظارة شمسية
swimming shorts	شورت سباحة	scarf	وشاح (كوفية)
sweater	قميص صوفى	sneakers	حذاء رياضي
necklace	عقد	pajamas	بيجامة
spotted	منقط	striped	مخطط
suitcase	حقيرة سفر	coat	معطف
galabeya	جلابية	trip	رحلة
comfortable	مريح	stripes	خطوط
excited	متشوق / متحمس	exciting	مثير / شيق

Lesson (2)

sleeves	أكمام	pocket	جيب
belt	حزام	crown	تاج
gloves	قفازات	social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي
Egyptian clothing	ملابس مصرية	traditional	تقليدي
robe	رداء	popular	شعبي
festival	احتفال	sunburned	مصاب بحروق لشمس
hidden	مخفي	colorful	ملون
information	معلومات	wedding	مهرجان / عيد
costume	زي	cotton	قطن

Lesson (3)

kind	طيب	honest	مخلص
poor	فقير	happy	سعيد
tired	متعب	beautiful	جميل
amazing	مدهل	delicious	لذيذ
new	جديد	elves	أقزام
shoemaker	صانع الأحذية	wife	زوجة
workshop	ورشة	leather	جلد
little	صغير الحجم	surprised	متفاجئ

Lessons (4 & 5)

uniform	زي موحد	short-sleeved	قصير الأكمام
trousers	بنطلون	tie	كرافته (رابطة عنق)
pale	فاتح	checked	أزروحات (ذو مربعات)
smart	أنيق	vest	سترة (صديري)
Mexico	المكسيك	sombrero	قبعة مكسيكية
linen	كتان	celebrations	حفلات

Language Focus

Infinitive of purpose

to + infinitive ...



She went to town **to buy** a dress.



He bought new sneakers **to wear** for playing football.

Unit 3

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

تيشرت
حذاء رياضي
وشاح (كوفية)
قميص صوفي
مخطط
زى موحد

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

شورت سباحة
نظارة شمسية
منقط
بيجامة
عقد
جلابية

Lesson 2

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

قفازات
مخفي
أنماط / أشكال
تاج
مهرحان
تقليدي

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

معلومات
أكمام
بدلة
حزام
جيوب
قطن

Lesson 3

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

احتفالات
كافي
وجبة
صانع أحذية
جلد

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

فقير
صادق/ أمين
متفاجئ
أصلح
انتظر

Lessons 4 & 5

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

ذهب
جوارب
كاروهات (ذو مربعات)
ملون
سترة (صديري)
أعياد

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

قصير الأكمام
كراطة (رابطة العنق)
أنيق
قبعة مكسيكية
بنطلون
خطوط

لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about a trip:

- I am traveling to (المكان)
- I am traveling with (من)
- I am packing (أشياء) because (السبب)
- Mom is packing (أشياء) because (السبب)
- My sister is packing (أشياء) because (السبب)

Our trip to Al Fayoum

I am traveling to Al Fayoum tomorrow. I am traveling with my family. I need to pack our suitcases. I am packing my sneakers because I'll be walking around. Mom is packing her sweater because it can be cool in the evenings. My sister is packing her sunglasses because it will be very sunny.

How to write about your favorite clothes:

- My favorite clothes are (الملابس)
- This is (شكل القميص)
- It is () because ()
- It has ()
- I wear it for ()

My favorite clothes

My favorite clothes are the galabeya. This is the long white robe that is very popular. It is cool because it's made of cotton. It has pockets, but they're hidden. It has long sleeves, so we don't get sunburned. I wear it in Eid festivals.

How to write about your school uniform:

- My school uniform is (صفحة)
- Girls wear (الملابس الخاص بالبنات)
- Boys wear ()
- Boys have to wear ()
- The boys and girls wear/ We all wear (ملابس مشتركة للبنات والأولاد)
- I like my school uniform so much.

My school uniform

My school uniform is very beautiful. Girls wear yellow shirts and blue skirts. Boys wear white shirts and gray trousers. Boys have to wear a dark red tie every day. The boys and girls wear black shoes and white socks. We all wear red sweaters in winter. I like my school uniform so much.

يُتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التي وردت بكتاب الوزارة.

1 Circle the correct words:

- 1 I went to the library **borrow/ to borrow** a book.
- 2 Injy used a pen **to write/ write** her essay.
- 3 Sherif bought a new suitcase **take/ to take** on holiday.
- 4 Malak wears her sunglasses **to protect/ protect** her eyes.

2 Look and make sentences in the past simple to express purpose:

- 1 I / go / to my bedroom / sleep

Nayera / leave / the party / catch / her train

Adam / call / Younis / ask for help with his project

Tarek / buy / a racket / play tennis

My teacher/use/a red pen/correct homework

3 Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct order:

- 1 She wore a dress. (cotton, green)
- 2 He had to wear an hat. (old, orange)
- 3 Dad bought me a galabeya. (white, new)
- 4 The shoemaker made shoes. (small, leather)
- 5 I bought a jacket for the party. (green, new)



Listening

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:



6

- 1 Boys wear a dark shirt.
a) green b) yellow c) red d) blue
- 2 Boys have to wear a every day.
a) sweater b) tie c) jacket d) bag
- 3 The girls wear a dark gray
a) shoes b) skirt c) socks d) tie
- 4 In winter, boys and girls wear a dark red
a) shirt b) skirt c) jacket d) T-shirt



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Dresses are types of
a) food b) clothes c) meals d) team
- 2 People wear sweaters and in cold weather.
a) goggles b) shorts c) coats d) rings
- 3 She wears a around her neck.
a) dress b) necklace c) shoes d) skirt
- 4 She wears a crown on her
a) leg b) hand c) arm d) head

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sweaters — trousers — socks — stripes — short-sleeved

دمياط · إدارة دمياط الجديدة 2024

I really liked our school uniform. Everyone wears a(1)..... white shirt. The girls wear a blue skirt and the boys wear blue(2)..... We all have to wear white(3)..... and black leather shoes. It doesn't get very cold here, but when it does, we can wear our blue(4).....

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

الشرقية - إدارة قاقوس - 2024

I'm Fares. I'm doing a school project about Egyptian clothing. Many men wear the galabeya. This is the long white robe that is very popular, it's cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors, too. The sleeves are long so we don't get sunburned! There are pockets, but they're hidden - you can't see them from the outside. We wear galabeya when we are celebrating Eid, they are very beautiful. They can be colorful. Sometimes, there are beautiful patterns on them.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
a) pockets b) sleeves c) galabeya d) Eid
- 2 Fares is doing a school project about Egyptian
a) sports b) clothing c) food d) teachers

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What is galabeya made from?

.....

- 4 When do we wear galabeya?

.....



Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 usually – What – you – wear – do?

.....

- 2 are – My scarfs – made – cotton – from.

.....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- 1 I bought a (green, new) jacket.

الدقهلية – إدارة وسط المنصورة - 2024

Jack (big) a very big giant last night.

الإسكندرية – إدارة وسط - 2024

Punctuate the following:

1

omar is wearing a coat and scarf

الإسكندرية – إدارة وسط - 2024

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

“Clothes”

الإسكندرية – إدارة برج العرب 2024

سحاب منه
آخر الكتاب
صفحة
308

galabeya – made from cotton

.....
.....
.....



Assess your progress

★★★★★

< 50%

50 : 64%

Practice more

65 : 84%

85 : 100%

1

excited – sneakers – holiday – pack

A : Are you going on a?

B : Yes. I am so!

A : What will you?

B : I will need my

2

My favorite clothes are my cotton shirt and linen trousers. They are very comfortable. My new white linen trousers are very beautiful. I bought them last week. I also like the new spotted jacket. It is my favorite because it is comfortable and bright. When I wear that jacket, I usually put on my black tie. They look smart together.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 My favorite clothes are my shirt and linen trousers.

a) cotton b) linen c) wool d) wood

2 My linen trousers are very

a) tight b) pale c) light d) comfortable

3 I usually put on my when I wear my jacket.

a) tie b) trousers c) jeans d) socks

Answer the following questions:

4 Why is the new jacket your favorite?

5 When did you buy the new trousers?

3

Choose the correct answer:

1 Girls in Mexico love bright (food – colors – juice).

I wear (sunglasses – gloves – crown) to protect my eyes.

Nadia is wearing a (spotted – striped – costume) dress. It has red and black dots all over it.

2 Marwa went to town to (buy – bought – buying) a new dress.

Adel (packs – packed – packing) his black trousers yesterday.

Theme 2

Myself and others أنا والآخرين





Unit Objectives

- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

listen, read, research, and write about different landscapes.
 learn about Elephantine Island.
 use sentences in the past continuous.
 learn and talk about eco-tourism in Egypt.
 learn how to say three consonants together.
 learn to correct spelling mistakes.
 write a flyer about eco-tourism in Egypt.

Did you know?

There are lots of amazing natural *landscapes* in the White Desert. The rocks are *shaped like* chickens, mushrooms, tents, and ice cream cones.

Find out!

There are lots of unusual places to visit in Egypt, like the Temples of Abu Simbel. The queen and the king are *carved into* the mountain. People who live near unusual places can *benefit from* tourists, but tourists can sometimes damage historical places.

يستفيد من * benefit from | منحوتة في * carved into | على شكل * shaped like | حيرى



1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



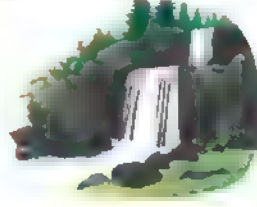
Main vocabulary



mountain



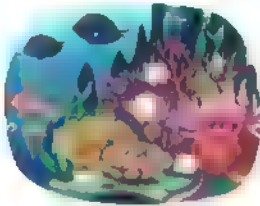
lake



waterfall



forest



coral reefs

الشعاب المرجانية



island

جزيرة

Egyptian cities, towns, and villages

مدن، بلدات، وقرى مصرية

City



Alexandria

مدينة الإسكندرية

Town



Dahab

دهب

Village



Nubian village

القرية النوبية

Famous tourist places in Egypt

أماكن سياحية شهيرة في مصر



Aswan Botanical Garden



Temple of Philae



Tombs of the Nobles



Let's say it right!

• لاحظ أن حرف الـ (s) في كلمة (island) حرف (silent) صامت لا ينطق.

• لاحظ أن حرف الـ (b) في كلمة (tomb) حرف (silent) صامت لا ينطق.

Extra vocabulary

postcard	بطاقة بريدية	fantastic	رائع	shape	شكل
part	جزء	history	تاريخ	rare	نادر
calendar	تقويم	reign	فترة الحكم	Thutmose III	تحتمس الثالث
calm	هادئ	traffic	ازدحام مروري	quiet	هادئ
desert	صحراء	sunset	غروب الشمس	particularly	خصوصًا
felucca	فلوكة (قارب صغير)	decorated	مزينة	trip	رحلة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
miss	missed	travel	traveled
try	tried	decorate	decorated

Irregular verbs

Present	Past	Present	Past
understand	understood	leave	left

Expressions and Phrases

I'm missing you!	أنا مفقودك!	there's lots to see	هناك الكثير لتراه
the oldest part of	أقدم جزءًا من	in fact	في الواقع / في الحقيقة
full of	مليء بـ	after that	بعد ذلك
It's not only about	الأمر لا يتعلق فقط بـ ...	go for long walks	امشي لمسافات طويلة
from the reign of ...	من فترة حكم (اسم الحاكم) ...	brightly decorated houses	منارل مزينة بألوان زاهية
through the desert	عبر الصحراء	Can't wait to see you soon!	لا أطيع (أتحمل) الانتظار لرؤيتك قريبًا!

Important sentences

- * Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. جزيرة إلمنتين هي أقدم مناطق أسوان.
- * We found a very rare calendar. وجدنا تقويمًا نادرًا جدًا.
- * There's no traffic, so it's very quiet. لا يوجد ازدحام مروري لذا فالمكان هادئ جدًا.
- * The sunsets are fantastic from a felucca. غروب الشمس رائع من الفلوكة.
- * They have beautiful brightly decorated houses. لديهم منازل جميلة مزينة بألوان زاهية.

Take care!

e.g. quiet هادئ – quite إلى حد ما

بعض الكلمات لها نفس النطق ولكن بحذف في اللهجته والمعنى.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 We could climb up the high (lake – mountain – forest – island) yesterday.
- 2 In a (coral reef – waterfall – desert – forest), you can see a lot of trees.
- 3 There are different shapes and colors of (coral reefs – forests – waterfalls – mountains) in the Red Sea.
- 4 Alexandria is a (village – city – town – country).



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

Where did Nagwa go? أين ذهبت نجوى؟

Hi Dalia!

How are you? I'm missing you! I'm on Elephantine Island and it's the most fantastic place! It's in Aswan and there's lots to see. Yesterday, I was traveling by boat to the island with my friends. We were trying to understand the 'Elephantine' name. – we think it's the shape!

هلاً داليا!

كيف حالت؟ أنا أشتاق لك! أنا على جزيرة إلفنتين وهي المكان الأكثر روعة! إنها في أسوان وهناك الكثير لرؤية. سافرت بالبريد إلى جزيرة مع أصدقائي. كنا نحاول فهم اسم 'إلفنتين' نحن نحقق به شكل الجزيرة

Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. In fact, all the island is full of history. After that, we went to the Aswan Museum. We were looking at all the old things from the island when we found a very rare calendar from the reign of Thutmose III.

جزيرة إلفنتين هي أقدم جزء في أسوان. في الواقع، الجزيرة كلها ممتلئة بالتاريخ. بعد ذلك، ذهبنا إلى متحف أسوان، وكنا نبحث عن أشياء قديمة على الجزيرة عندما عثرنا على تقويم بدار حذا من فترة حكم تحتمس الثالث.

But it's not only about history – it's a beautiful and calm place. There's no traffic, so it's very quiet, and the air is clean. We can go for long walks. There are no forests but there are lots of trees, so it's quite green. The sunsets are fantastic, particularly from a felucca. We were walking in one of the Nubian villages this morning.

They have beautiful brightly decorated houses. We had lunch there looking at the Nile. Tomorrow is our last morning, so we're going to walk to the Tombs of the Nobles through the desert. I'll be so sad to leave.

Can't wait to see you soon!

Nagwa

لكن الأمر لا يتعلق فقط بالتاريخ. لكنه مكان جميل وهادئ. لا يوجد ازدحام مروري، ولذا فهو هادئ جداً، والهواء نقي، يمكنك المشي لمسافات طويلة. لا يوجد عابث ولكن يوجد الكثير من الأشجار، لذلك فهي حصرية إلى حد ما. غروب شمس رائع. خاصة من الفلوكه. هذا الصباح كنا نسير في قرية من القرى النوبية. فهي تحوي على مزارع جميلة مزينة بأشجار مسرقة. نوبيا بعدد هياك ونحن نسير إلى النيل. عدا آخر صباح لنا بذلك نسير إلى مقابر النبلاء عبر الصحراء. سوف تكون حرة جداً للمطالبة

لا أظنك لاستطاع نوبيا

نحوي



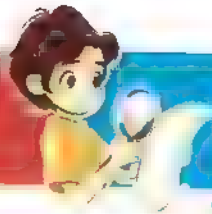
"Elephantine Island" might have received its name from the shape of the rounded rocks along the banks of the island, which look like elephants.

ربما تلقت جزيرة إلفنتين اسمها من شكل الصخور المستديرة على طول ضفاف الجزيرة، والتي تشبه الأفيال.



Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Elephantine Island is in (Danab – Alexanaria – Aswan – Cairo).
- 2 Elephantine Island is full of (history – flowers – forests – waterfalls).
- 3 The sunsets are very fantastic from a (b ke – car – bus – fe ucca).



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Elephantine Island is the part of Aswan.
a) newest b) farthest c) smallest d) oldest
- 2 The island is full of
a) rivers b) people c) history d) kings
- 3 There is a rare on the island.
a) stone b) calendar c) museum d) temple
- 4 The island is also a beautiful, place.
a) noisy b) calm c) boring d) far

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I was traveling by boat to the
a) street b) road c) desert d) island
الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024
- 2 Elephantine is in Aswan.
a) River b) Island c) Lake d) Oasis
الشرقية - المصالحية الجديدة 2024
- 3 That bird is very in our country. There aren't many of it.
a) exciting b) rare c) fantastic d) beautiful
- 4 There is no, so the island is very quiet.
a) farms b) traffic c) rivers d) buildings
الشرقية - إدارة أبو حماد 2024
- 5 There are lots of, so the place is quite green.
a) cars b) trees c) birds d) people
- 6 They enjoyed the at 6 pm in Luxor.
a) sunset b) sunrise c) sunburn d) sunny
الشرقية - إدارة ههيا 2024
- 7 is a town.
a) Cairo b) Dahab c) Aswan d) Egypt
- 8 This calendar is from the of Thutmose III.
a) home b) reign c) class d) island
الشرقية - إدارة القضايات 2024

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

family – oldest – rare – Island – lake

الشرقية - إدارة العاشر 2024

I went to Aswan with my (1) last week. We traveled there by train. We visited the Elephantine (2) We went by boat. It is the (3) part of Aswan. We found a very (4) calendar.

Read the text and answer the questions:

Eman visited Elephantine Island last month. Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. The island is full of history and amazing sights. You can visit the Aswan Museum. There is a rare calendar from the reign of Thutmose III. It's also a beautiful and calm place. There's no traffic, and it's very quiet. There aren't any forests there, but there are lots of trees, so it's quite green. Amira says it's better to go there in the winter because it can get really hot in the summer.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The word "rare" means
 a) a lot b) many c) much d) very few
- 2 There are a lot of on the island.
 a) forests b) trees c) traffic d) corals

Answer the following questions:

- 3 When did Eman visit the Elephantine Island?

- 4 Why is it better to go there in the winter?

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 am – I – Island – Elephantine – on.

الشرقية - إدارة شرق الزقازيق 2024

- 2 were – the island – We – to – traveling – by – boat.

الدقهلية - ميت غمر 2024

- 3 are – The – from – fantastic – a felucca – sunsets.

- 4 a – Island – place – fantastic – Elephantine – is.

Punctuate the following:

- 1 We went to the aswan museum.

- 2 where did Nagwa go



Language Focus

The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

We use the past continuous tense for something that happened and continued over a period of time in the past.

Affirmative Form

I / He / She / It	was	(inf.) + ing .
You / We / They	were	

e.g. She **was cooking** yesterday at 6 o'clock.

We **were playing** football yesterday at 2 o'clock.

Negative Form

I / He / She / It	was not / wasn't	(inf.) + ing
You / We / They	were not (weren't)	

e.g. Judy **wasn't sleeping** yesterday at 8 pm.

The tigers **weren't drinking** water yesterday morning.

Yes/No question: السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال	Was Were	I / he / she / it you / we / they	(inf) + ing . ?
	Yes, No,	subject	
Answer الإجابة	was/were. wasn't, weren't.		

e.g. A: Was Amira writing in her book?

A: Were the boys eating lunch?

B: Yes, she was.

B: No, they weren't.



تتحول (Were you) في السؤال إلى (I was / We were) في الإجابة.

Wh- question: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	was	I / he / she / it	(inf.) + ing ?
	were	you / we / they	

What **was** the girl **doing** at 6 am yesterday?

B: She **was having** breakfast.

all (day / morning / evening / night / yesterday)
at (6, 7, 8, ... o'clock / am / pm / yesterday)

The children **were playing** football **all morning** yesterday.
Ali **was studying** Arabic at **7 pm** yesterday.



سواء كيف بصيغ ing للفعل

١. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) صامت يسبقه حرف ساكن، فإننا نحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing):

mak → making tak → taking

٢. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك، فإننا نضاعف الحرف الأخير عند إضافة الـ (ing):

sw → swimming sh → shopping

Choose the correct answer:

- They (**are** – were – is – **was**) studying English yesterday at 10 am.
- He (**played** – **was playing** – are playing – is playing) at 3 pm yesterday.
- What were the children (**do** – **does** – **doing** – **did**) at 8 am yesterday?
- Was (**he** – they – you – **we**) having a great time?
- I (**were** – is – was – **are**) traveling by boat to the island.
- I (**slept** – was sleeping – sleep – **sleeps**) at 6 am yesterday.
- A (**Does** – Was – Has – **Is**) she making fatta? B: Yes, she was.
- Were they (**swimming** – swim – swims – **swam**) in the sea?
- A Were you studying English? B: No, we (**were** – are – do – **weren't**).
- (Was – Were – Do – Have) you listening to music?



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Sara was studying at 10 yesterday.
a) math b) English c) science d) computer
- 2 They were having at 8 in the morning.
a) school b) lunch c) dinner d) breakfast
- 3 They were the radio yesterday evening.
a) watching b) swimming c) making d) listening to
- 4 The were swimming in the lake.
a) cat b) fish c) fox d) tiger

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

sleeping – drinking – walking – swimming – studying

I'm Adam. I was at the zoo yesterday at 10 o'clock. The fox was(1).....
under a tree. The fish were(2)..... in the lake. The tiger was(3).....
water. The cat wasn't running. It was sitting. The people were(4)..... around.
I was watching everyone. I was having a great time.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 having – We – great – a – time – were.
.....
- 2 6 pm – What – doing – at – you – were?
.....
- 3 they – lake – in – Were – a – swimming?
.....
- 4 sleeping – at – 8 pm – He – yesterday – wasn't.
.....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 The tiger was (drink) water.
- 2 What (were) he doing at 5 pm yesterday? الدقهلية - إدارة بلقاس 2024
- 3 What were you (do) last night? الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح 2024
- 4 (you were) making fatta at 4 o'clock yesterday?
- 5 Was she watching TV? B. Yes, she (wasn't).
- 6 (He) were having a good time.
- 7 Was the cat (run)?
- 8 She was studying English at 10 pm (today).
- 9 What (are) the children doing at 5 o'clock yesterday? الشرقية - إدارة ههيا 2024
- 10 They (s) sleeping at 10 yesterday. الشرقية - إدارة صان الحجر 2024
- 11 Were you (make) a cake? الشرقية - إدارة كفر صقر 2024
- 12 (Are) they reading at 2 pm yesterday? الشرقية - إدارة الصالحية الجديدة 2024
- 13 I (am) studying from 6 to 8 yesterday. الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024
- 14 He was (trave) to Cairo yesterday evening. الدقهلية - إدارة ميت غمر 2024
- 15 What (is) she cooking at 3 o'clock yesterday? الدقهلية - إدارة ميت غمر 2024

Punctuate the following:

1 i was studying english.

2 What was ahmed doing at 3 pm yesterday

الشرقية - إدارة القبايات 2024

Write a text of about THIRTY words using the following questions:

"What were you doing?"

مجاب عنه
آخر الكتاب
صفحة
308

Yesterday at 6 am, ... - I was having ... - yesterday at 10 pm

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



ECO-TOURISM السياحة البيئية



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	carbon dioxide	ثاني أكسيد الكربون	environment	البيئة
eco-tourists	السياح البيئيين	pollution	تلوث	hotel	فندق
wildlife	حياة برية	coral reefs	شعب مرجانية	normal tourism	السياحة العادية

Extra vocabulary

tour guide	مرشد سياحي	Hurghada	الغردقة	exciting (adj.)	شيق - ممتع
local people	السكان المحليون	local (adj.)	محلي	project	مشروع
culture	ثقافة	plane journeys	رحلات طيران	natural (adj.)	طبيعي
historical (adj.)	تاريخي	monuments	أثار تاريخية	comfortable (adj.)	مريح
Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة	UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو	eco-village	قرية بيئية

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
cause	caused	travel	traveled
stay	stayed	preserve	preserved
create	created	damage	damaged
support	supported	introduce	introduced

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
tell	told	pay	paid
come	came	dive	dove

Expressions and Phrases

Thank you for	شكراً على	look after	يعتني بـ	because of	بسبب
on foot	سيراً على الأقدام	I see.	أفهمك	learn about	يتعلم عن
Of course.	بالطبع	That sounds very good.	هذا يبدو جيداً جداً	give jobs	توفر فرص العمل



Definitions

Eco-	متعلق بالبيئة	means relating to the environment	تعني الارتباط بالبيئة
		e.g. eco-tourism	
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people	السياحة التي تهتم بالبيئة وتساعد السكان المحليين.



2. Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ وتبادل الأدوار:



Presenter

Hello, Sherif. Thank you for coming to talk to us. Sherif is a tour guide in Hurghada. Tell us about eco-tourism, please. What is it?

هلا شريف، شكراً على مجيئك معنا. شريف مرشد سياحي في هرجادة. أخبرنا عن سياحة بيئية من فضلك.

Sherif



Hello, Dalia. Eco-tourism is very exciting. It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people.

هلا داليا، سياحة بيئية مثيرة جداً. هي نوع من السياحة الذي يهتم بالبيئة المحلية ويساعد السكان المحليين.



Presenter

How does it help the environment and people?

كيف تساعد البيئة والناس؟

Sherif



Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution planes cause. They travel by train, on foot, or by bike.

سياح بيئيون لا يحبون السفر بالطائرة بسبب التلوث الذي تسببه الطائرات. هم لا يفضلون السفر بالقطار، سيراً على الأقدام، أو بالدراجة.



Presenter

I see. Where do they stay?

أفهم ذلك، أين يقيمون؟

Sherif



They don't like big hotels. They stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.

هم لا يفضلون الفنادق الكبيرة. سئموا في الفنادق الصغيرة المحلية، يدفعون مقابل البقاء في منازل السكان المحليين.



Presenter

What do they do when they travel?

Sherif



They like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.

هم يحبون أن يتعلموا عن مشاريع الحياة البرية و الثقافة المحلية.



Presenter

Can you give me an example?

Sherif



Of course. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects in the Red Sea, preserving the coral reefs and the sea animals. Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can dive and how they can be with the animals.

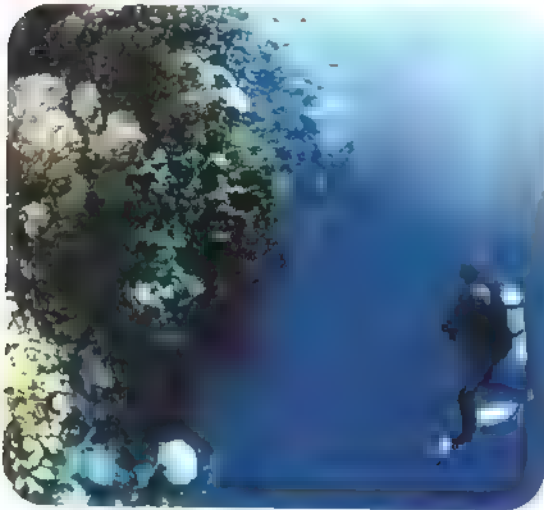
طبع، هنا في مصر، لدينا بعض المشاريع، بحمته في منطقة «بحر الأحمر» لحماية أسماك المرجان.

يسمى هؤلاء السياح مع الحيوانات.



Presenter

That sounds very good! Thank you for your time, Sherif.



A tourist diving in the Red Sea
near a coral reef



Siwa Oasis Tourism
UNESCO Eco Village

Important sentences جمل هامة

- * Eco-tourism looks after the environment and helps local people.
السياحة البيئية تهتم بالبيئة وتساعد السكان المحليين.
- * Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the pollution that planes cause.
لا يحب السياح البيئيون السفر بالطائرة بسبب التلوث الذي تسببه الطائرات.
- * Eco-tourists stay in small, local hotels or pay to stay in people's houses.
يقوم السياح البيئيون في فنادق محلية صغيرة أو يدفعون مقابل الإقامة في منازل الناس.
- * Eco-tourists like to learn about local wildlife projects and local culture.
يحب السياح البيئيون التعرف على مشاريع الحياة البرية المحلية والثقافة المحلية.
- * Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the coral reefs.
هنا في مصر، لدينا بعض المشروعات الرائعة جدًا للعناية بالشعاب المرجانية.



3. Read and notice:

اقرأ ولاحظ:

TOURISM السياحة**Good things about tourism**
أشياء جيدة عن السياحة

- 1 It gives jobs for local people.
- 2 It helps people learn about new cultures.

**Bad things about tourism**
أشياء سيئة عن السياحة

- 1 It creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.
- 2 It damages the natural environment.
- 3 It damages historical places or monuments.

تدمر الأماكن التاريخية والمعالم الأثرية

ECO-TOURISM السياحة البيئية**Pros**
إيجابيات

- 1 It helps the environment.
- 2 It's unusual and exciting.
- 3 It's educational.
- 4 It supports local businesses.

Cons
سلبيات

- 1 It's not as comfortable as normal tourism.
- 2 There are limited places you can reach without taking a plane.
- 3 It's less common and not as easy to find as normal tourism.
- 4 It's sometimes more expensive.



Pronunciation



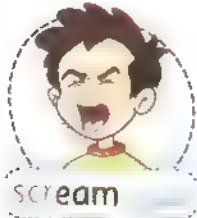
4. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



Three-consonant blends مجموعات من ثلاثة حروف ساكنة

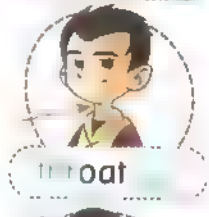
scr /skr/



str /str/



thr /θr/



The king sat on his throne eating strawberries on a string. He was scratching his throat. He heard a scream. A strong man came to help.

جلس الملك على عرشه فاكل الفراولة على الحيط. كان يحك حلقه. سمع صرخة. جاء رجل قوي لمساعدته.



Words that can be misspelled

✓ X
milk ()

✓ X
chocolate ()

✓ X
ice skating ()

✓ X
lake ()

✓ X
pearls ()

✓ X
sneakers ()



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- Sherif is a
a) teacher b) doctor c) tour guide d) builder
- Tourism gives for local people.
a) clothes b) jobs c) presents d) food
- Tourism creates too much carbon dioxide from journeys.
a) bus b) taxi c) plane d) boat
- Tourism damages historical places or
a) environment b) people c) monuments d) projects



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- "Eco" means relating to the
a) environment b) school c) culture d) home
الإسكندرية - إدارة المتزه 2024
- Eco-tourism looks the environment.
a) up b) at c) for d) after
الدقهلية - ديرب نجم 2024
- don't travel by planes, they travel by bikes or on foot.
a) Local people b) Tour guides c) Eco-tourists d) Coral reefs
- In Egypt, we have some nice projects looking after reefs.
a) seeds b) weeds c) leaves d) coral
الشرقية - بلبيس 2024
- Eco-tourism isn't as as normal tourism.
a) good b) comfortable c) expensive d) exciting
- Tourism too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys.
a) damages b) creates c) stays d) looks
- The tell the tourists where they can dive.
a) vets b) engineers c) teachers d) guides
الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة 2024
- Plane journeys can cause
a) environment b) pollution c) wildlife d) project



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

wildlife – pollution – hotels – coral – huts

Eco-tourism looks after the environment and helps local people. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the(1)..... that planes cause. They stay in small, local(2)..... or pay to stay in people's houses. They like to learn about local(3)..... projects and local culture. Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the(4)..... reefs.

1 Read the text and answer the questions:

Tourism is very important to a lot of countries. On the one hand, it gives jobs to local people. It helps tourists learn about new cultures. On the other hand, it can damage the environment. Plane journeys cause a lot of pollution because they create too much carbon dioxide. Tourism can damage the natural environment and historical places. People should try eco-tourism. It looks after wildlife, monuments, and local people.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Plane journeys cause a lot of
 a) pollution b) population c) natural d) station
- 2 Tourism gives local people
 a) food b) drinks c) clothes d) jobs

3 Answer the following questions:

- 3 What can tourism damage?

- 4 Why should people try eco-tourism?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 like – local – Tourists – learn – to – about – culture.

الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة - 2024

- 2 reefs – near – like to – dive – Eco-tourists – coral.

الحيزة - إدارة 6 أكتوبر - 2024

- 3 the – looks – Eco-tourism – after – environment.

- 4 places – damages – or – historical – Tourism – monuments.

5 Punctuate the following:

- 1 How does eco-tourism help egypt

- 2 Tourists dive in the red Sea near the coral reefs

الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة - 2024



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

eco-resort	منتجع بيئي	excellent (adj.)	ممتاز	fantastic (adj.)	رائع
wildlife	الحياة البرية	fascinating	جذاب / ساحر	hiking	جولة على الأقدام (التزهر)
eco-lodges	مساكن بيئية	eco-holiday	إجازة بيئية	hut	كوخ (منزل صغير)

Extra vocabulary

Taba	طابا	eco-tourism	سياحة بيئية
valley	وادي	mountain	جبل
like	مثل	Nubian ibex	الوعل الوبى
rare (adj.)	نادر	friendly (adj.)	ودود
environment	بيئة	history	تاريخ
Nawamis	قرية نواميس	village	قرية
round (adj.)	دائري الشكل	buildings	مبانى
camps	معسكرات	activities	أنشطة
structure	بناء / هيكل	flyer	نشرة إعلانية
main heading	عنوان رئيسي	sub heading	عنوان فرعي
perfect (adj.)	ممتاز / مثالي	wonderful (adj.)	رائع
local culture	الثقافة المحلية	eco-village	قرية بيئية
comfortable (adj.)	مريح	cool	رائع
eco-destination	وجهة بيئية	eco-friendly (adj.)	صديق للبيئة

Conjugation of verbs

نصريف الأفعال
Regular verbs

Present		Past		Present		Past	
camp	يخيم	camped		advertise	يعلن عن	advertised	
dive	يغطس	dived		stay	يقيم	stayed	

Expressions and Phrases

good for	جيد لـ	example of	مثال على
works well	تعمل جيدًا	have a meal with	يتناول وجبة مع
there is lots in	يوجد الكثير في	for a great holiday	للإجازة رائعة
their way of life	طريقة معيشتهم	6,000-year-old	عمرها ٦٠٠٠ سنة
talk to them about	تكلم معهم عن	take part in	يشارك في

Definitions

An eco-destination:

is a place you are going to which is good for the environment. This is because people there look after the environment.

Important sentences جمل مهمة

- * Taba is an excellent example of eco-tourism in Egypt. طابا مثال ممتاز للسياحة البيئية في مصر.
- * The local people are very friendly. السكان المحليون ودودون للغاية.
- * There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. هناك النواميس، قرية ذات مباني مستديرة قديمة جدًا.
- * Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. يمكن للسياح البيئيين في طابا الاستمتاع بالغوص والمشي لمسافات طويلة والتخييم.
- * Eco-tourists can stay in camps and eco-lodges. يمكن للسياح البيئيين الإقامة في المعسكرات والمساكن البيئية.

REMEMBER

eco

means relating to the environment

e.g. eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة
eco-village	قرية بيئية
eco-destination	وجهة بيئية

eco-lodge	مسكن بيئي
eco-resort	منتجع بيئي
eco-tourist	سائح بيئي



Writing

Taba: My favorite eco-resort

طابا: المنتجع البيئي المفضل لدي



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

لماذا تعتبر طابا جيدة للسياحة البيئية؟ Why is Taba good for eco-tourism?

السياحة البيئية في مصر Eco-tourism in Egypt

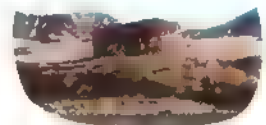
Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there.



Camp in Sinai, Egypt

طاب هي مثال ممتاز لجزء من مصر حيث السياحة البيئية تعمل بشكل جيد. هناك يمكنك ان تجد «وديان، الجبال، صحراء والبحر».

You can find fantastic wildlife in Taba, like the Nubian ibex, and rare birds. This is very good for the eco-tourists because they can go and enjoy the environment.



Nawamis Structure
Sinai, Egypt

يمكنك ان تجد حيوان برية رائعة في طابا، مثل: الوعل النوبي والطيور المارة. هذا جيد جدًا للسياح البيئيين لأنه يمكنهم الذهاب والاستمتاع بالبيئة.

The local people are very friendly, so the eco-tourists can have a meal with them or talk to them about their culture.

يسكن النوبيون ووديين جدا. لذلك يمكن للسياح ان يتناولوا وجبة معهم او يتحدث معهم عن ثقافتهم.

If you like history, there is lots in Taba. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. They are fascinating!

إذا كنت تحب التاريخ، فهناك الكثير في طابا. هناك «نواميس» قرية ذات مساكن دائرية قديمة جدًا! إنها مذهلة.

Eco-tourists in Taba can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping. They can stay in camps and eco-lodges. You can find everything in Taba for a great holiday!

في طابا يمكن للسياح البيئيين الاستمتاع بالقوس، التسلق، والتخييم. يمكنهم البقاء في المخيمات والمساكن البيئية. يمكنك ان تجد كل



Project



3. Look, read, and notice:

انظر، اقرأ ولاحظ:

A flyer advertising the eco-holiday in Taba

نشرة إعلانية عن عطلة بيئية في طابا

Perfect eco-tourism in Egypt

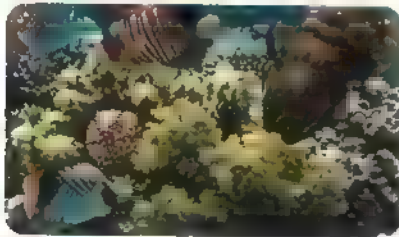
سياحة بيئية مثالية في مصر

Meet the local
people



Talk to them about their way of life.

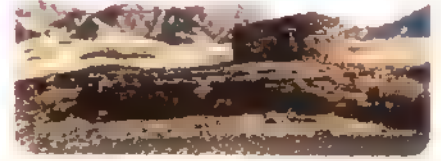
قابل السكان المحليين
نحدث معهم عن أسلوب حياتهم.



Enjoy the wildlife

Come and see the most fantastic wildlife
in Egypt! We have wonderful fish, birds,
and animals.

استمتع بالحياة البرية
نعال وشاهد الحياة البرية الأكثر روعة في مصر! لدينا أسماك
وطيور وحيوانات رائعة



Enjoy the local culture

Visit Nawamis, a 6,000-year-old
village.

استمتع بالثقافة المحلية
قم بزيارة قرية النواميس التي سبغ عمرها ٦٠٠٠ عام.



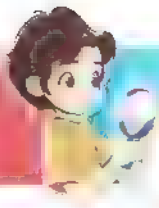
Stay in our comfortable huts
They are cool and eco-friendly.

ابق في أكواخنا المريحة
بها رائعة وصديقة للبيئة



Take part in exciting activities
You can hike, swim, and dive.

شارك في الأنشطة المثيرة
يمكنك استرخاء والسباحة و الغوص.



Eco-tourists in Taba can stay in camps and..... 2024 الدقهلية إدارة طلحا

- a) wildlife b) eco-lodges c) environment d) holiday

2 The local people in Taba are very

- a) noisy b) active c) friendly d) lazy

There's Nawamis, a village of....., very old buildings.

- a) triangular b) rectangular c) round d) square

.....helps people learn about new cultures. 2024 الشرقية إدارة قاقوس

- a) Pollution b) Tourism c) Wildlife d) Doctor

I saw wildlife animals in Taba like the and rare birds.

- a) Nubian ibex b) cat c) dog d) elephant

6 enjoy hiking and camping.

- a) Local people b) Eco-tourists c) Tour guides d) Wildlife

There are many coral in the Red Sea. 2024 الشرقية - إدارة العاشر

- a) loaves b) leaves c) reefs d) seeds

8 You can part in exciting activities. 2024 الدقهلية - إدارة طلحا

- a) bake b) make c) take d) eat

birds – lodges – wildlife – culture – village

You can have perfect eco-tourism in Egypt. You can enjoy the local (1) and visit Nawamis. It is a 6,000-year-old (2) You can meet the local people and talk to them about their way of life. Come and see the most fantastic (3) in Egypt. We have wonderful fish, (4), and animals.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. There are many activities to do in Taba. Tourists can hike in the mountains and valleys. They can swim and dive in the sea. They can also camp and stay in eco-lodges; they are cool and eco-friendly. The wildlife is fantastic in Taba. There is the Nubian ibex and many rare birds that live there. If you like history, visit the Nawamis. It is a village of round, very old buildings.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about in Taba.

- a) eco-tourism b) tourism c) running d) eco-lodges

2 Tourists can in the mountains and valleys.

- a) dive b) swim c) hike d) play

Answer the following questions:

3 What is Nawamis?

4 Summarize the text in two sentences.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 and – Eco-lodges – are – eco-friendly – cool.

2 enjoy – Taba – Tourists – environment – in – the.

3 can – in – Tourists – stay – eco-lodges.

الإسكندرية - الإبراهيمية 2024

4 is – a historical – Nawamis – in – village – Taba.

Punctuate the following:

1 You can hike camp, swim, and dive

2 Why is Taba good for eco-tourism

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements: "My favorite eco-resort"



Where:

Taba, Egypt

Wildlife:

Nubian ibex, rare birds

Activities for eco-tourists:

diving, hiking, and camping



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة

Lesson (1)

mountain	جبل	lake	بحيرة
waterfall	شلال	forest	غابة
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	island	جزيرة
postcard	بطاقة بريدية	fantastic	رائع
shape	شكل	history	تاريخ
rare	نادر	calendar	تقويم
reign	فترة الحكم	museum	متحف
traffic	ازدحام مروري	sunset	غروب الشمس
felucca	فلوكة (قارب صغير)	decorated	مربعة

Lesson (3)

eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	tourism	السياحة
local people	السكان المحليون	eco-tourists	السياح البيئيون
wildlife	الحياة البرية	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	environment	البيئة
pollution	التلوث	hotel	فندق
culture	ثقافة	plane journeys	رحلات طيران
monuments	آثار تاريخية	comfortable	مريح
screw	مسامير	scratch	يخدش
string	خيوط	throne	عرش
scream	يصرخ	throat	حلق
through	عبر / خلال	throw	يرمي

Lessons (4&5)

eco-resort	منتجع سياحي	excellent	ممتاز	fascinating	جذاب / ساحر
hiking	جولة على الأقدام (التنزه)	eco-lodges	مساكن بيئية	hut	كوخ (منزل صغير)
campus	معسكرات	structure	بناء (هيكل)	perfect	ممتاز / مثالي
local culture	الثقافة المحلية	eco-village	قرية بيئية	eco-destination	وجهة بيئية

Language Focus

The Past Continuous Tense

If / He / She / It
You / We / They

- She was cooking yesterday at 6 o'clock.
We were playing football yesterday at 2 o'clock.

If / He / She / It was not / wasn't (inf) + ing
You / We / They were not / weren't

- Judy wasn't sleeping yesterday at 8 pm.
The tigers weren't drinking water yesterday morning.

Yes/No questions: السؤال بـ (هل):

Question السؤال I / he / she / it
you / we / they
Answer الإجابة subject

- Amira ... in her book?
B Yes, she ...
A Were the boys eating lunch?
B No, they weren't.

Wh- questions: السؤال باستخدام كلمة الاستفهام:

Question word كلمة الاستفهام was / were I / he / she / it
you / we / they (inf) + ing ?

- What was the girl doing at 6 am yesterday?
B She was having breakfast.

Keywords: كلمات مفتاحية

all (day / morning / evening / night / yesterday)
at (6, 7, 8, ... o'clock / am / pm / yesterday)



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

شلال	جل
غابة	بحيرة
نادر	شعاب مرجانية
هادئ	جزيرة
القرية النوبية	مقابر النبلاء

Lesson 3

السياحة البيئية	فندق
مريح	مسمار
السكان المحليون	يخدش
السياح البيئيين	شاشة
حياة برية	يصرخ
شعاب مرجانية	خيوط
مرشد سياحي	عرش
البيئة	يرعى
التلوث	تاريخي

Lessons 4 & 5

منتجع بيئي	مساكن بيئية
ممتاز	إجازة بيئية
معسكرات	كوخ
جذاب / ساحر	وادي
جولة على الأقدام	ودود

WRITING TIME

تجميع لأهم
موضوعات
الوحدة



لكن يمكنك من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about a trip to a city:

- I went to (اسم المدينة)
- We visited (اسم المكان)
- We went by (وسيلة النقل)
- It was (وصف للمكان)
- It is (معلومات عن المكان)
- We also went to (مكان مختلف)
- We found (أشياء في المكان)
- After that, we went to (مكان مختلف)
- It has (صفات في المكان)

My trip to Aswan

I went to Aswan with my family. We visited Elephantine Island. We went there by boat. It was so beautiful and calm. It is the oldest part of Aswan. We also went to the Aswan Museum. We found a very rare calendar. After that, we went to a Nubian village. It has beautiful brightly decorated houses.

How to write about your favorite resort:

- (اسم) is my favorite resort.
- (اسم) is an excellent example of eco-tourism.
- You can find (اسم بحيرة)
- The local people are (وصف)
- There's (مكان مشهور), (وصف للمكان)
- Eco-tourists can (نشطة غوبير بيبي سياح)

Taba is my favorite resort

Taba is my favorite resort. Taba is an excellent example of eco-tourism. You can find valleys, mountains, desert, and the sea there. The local people are very friendly. There's Nawamis, a village of round, very old buildings. Eco-tourists can enjoy diving, hiking, and camping.

How to write about eco-tourism:

- Eco-tourism is (معنى السياحة البيئية)
- The pros of eco-tourism are that (مميزات)
- The cons of eco-tourism are that (عيوب)

Eco-tourism

Eco-tourism is tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people. The pros of eco-tourism are that it helps the environment, and it's unusual and exciting. The cons of eco-tourism are that it's not as comfortable as normal tourism, and it's sometimes more expensive.

1 Change the sentences:

- 1 He was walking down the road. (→)
He wasn't walking down the road.
- 2 She wasn't eating an ice cream. (+)
- 3 They were looking at photos. (?)
- 4 We were watching TV. (→)
- 5 Was it raining? (→)

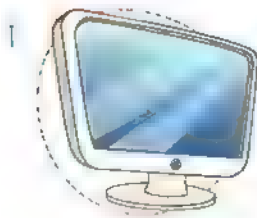
2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box:

coral – dive – environment – hotels – wildlife – pollution

- 1 Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It looks after the _____ and helps local people.
- 2 Eco-tourists don't like to travel by plane because of the _____ that planes cause.
- 3 They stay in small, local _____ or pay to stay in people's houses.
- 4 They like to learn about local _____ projects and local culture.
- 5 Here in Egypt, we have some very nice projects looking after the _____ reefs.
- 6 Tourists come to the Red Sea and the guides tell them where they can _____.

3 Look and complete the words with the letters in the box:

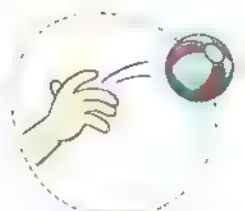
eam – ee – een – eet – ong – ow



scr _____



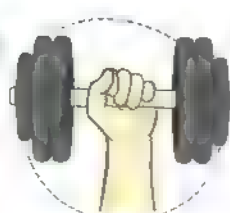
str _____



thr _____



thr _____



str _____



scr _____



Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

- 1 Elephantine is an amazing place. (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
a) Forest b) Desert c) Island d) Lake
- 2 Tourists can travel by to visit it.
a) taxi b) train c) plane d) boat
- 3 It is the oldest part of
a) Luxor b) Aswan c) Cairo d) Giza
- 4 There are no forests, but there are lots of
a) lakes b) ponds c) trees d) rivers



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Tourism gives for local people. (البحيرة - إيثاي البارود - 2024)
a) villages b) jobs c) farms d) homes
- 2 You can know today's date from the on the wall. (الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط - 2024)
a) calendar b) waterfall c) lake d) island
- 3 We traveled by ... through the Nile. (الإسكندرية - الإبراهيمية - 2024)
a) train b) felucca c) bus d) car
- 4 Eco-tourism looks after the (الإسماعيلية - 2024)
a) hotels b) planes c) environment d) clubs

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

monuments – books – local – environment – coral

Eco-tourism is very exciting. There are many pros to it. Eco-tourism helps the
(1)..... . Eco-tourism helps (2)..... people. Eco-tourism looks after historical
places, (3)..... , and natural wildlife. We have some very nice projects in the
Red Sea preserving the (4)..... reefs. Guides tell tourists where they can dive.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

I'm Salma. I like to look after the environment. I went on an *eco*-holiday with my friends. We went to Taba. We stayed in an eco-lodge. We went diving, hiking, and camping. We also saw the fantastic wildlife of Taba. We saw rare birds and the Nubian ibex. We went to Nawamis village. It's an amazing village of round, very old buildings. We also met the local people. They were very friendly. We had a meal with them, and we talked to them about their culture.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Salma went to with her friends.
a) Taba b) Alexandria c) Luxor d) Cairo
- The word "eco" means
a) house b) environment c) village d) tourism

Answer the following questions:

- Where did they stay in Taba?
- What activities did they do in Taba?



Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- the oldest – of Aswan – is – Ephantine – part – Island.

- were – doing, – you – Judy – What?

المحيرة – إيتاي البارود - 2024

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- Were you (ride) your bike at 6 pm?

المحيرة – إيتاي البارود - 2024

- She (is) watching TV at 7 o'clock yesterday.

الإسكندرية - برج العرب - 2024

Punctuate the following:

ضع علامات الترقيم للآتي:

1

was she cooking in the kitchen

المحيرة – إيتاي البارود - 2024

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"My trip to Aswan"

الدقهلية - ميت غمر 2024

مجاناً
أخر كتاب
صفحة
309

How to travel

boat

Places to visit

Aswan Museum



Assess your progress

★★★★★

< 50%

Study again

50 : 64%

Practice more

65 : 84%

Well done

85 : 100%

Well done!

167



1 Read and complete the dialogue:

local – pollution – foot – eco-tourism

A What is

B It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps people.

A How does it help the environment and people?

B Eco-tourists don't like to travel by planes because they cause

A How do eco-tourists travel?

B : They travel by train, on, or by bike.

2 Choose the correct answer:

1 She (saw – was – was swimming) in the sea yesterday at 6 am.

2 The name "Elephantine" means the (type – shape – color).

3 You can find fantastic (a lot of – supermarkets – country) in Taba.

4 When the sun goes down, it's the (sunrise – evening – sunset).

5 What (were – are – was) she cooking?

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 found – rare – We – calendar – very – a.

2 went – We – Museum – the – Aswan – to.

3 they – lake – in – Were – a – swimming?

4 sleeping – at – 8 pm – He – yesterday – wasn't.

5 like – travel – Eco-tourists – to – don't – plane – by.

NOVEMBER REVISION

يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من المراجعة على محتوى شهر نوفمبر.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 I wear a at school.
a) galabeya b) uniform c) pajamas d) necklace
الشرقية - إدارة شرق الزقازيق 2024
- 2 I wear my goggles to go..... .
a) swimming b) running c) squash d) kung fu
- 3 She has white on her hands.
a) crown b) gloves c) belt d) shoes
- 4 A galabeya has hidden
a) sleeves b) pockets c) belt d) robe
- 5 Sombrero is a traditional Mexican
a) dress b) hat c) trousers d) crown
محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب 2024
- 6 She wears a around her neck.
a) dress b) necklace c) shoes d) skirt
- 7 I bought new swimming to swim in the pool.
a) jacket b) shorts c) umbrella d) coat
الدقهلية - إدارة السلاويين العرب 2024
- 8 He packed his clothes in a small
a) kettle b) pot c) suitcase d) pencil case
البحيرة 2024
- 9 My galabeya is made of
a) cotton b) plastic c) wood d) food
الجيزة - إدارة الوراق 2024
- 10 I wear..... on my feet.
a) sneakers b) jackets c) coats d) skirts
القاهرة - إدارة هليوبوليس 2024
- 11 In Egypt, we have some nice projects looking after reefs.
a) seeds b) weeds c) leaves d) coral
الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس 2024
- 12 Eco-tourism helps to the wildlife.
a) protect b) build c) buy d) ask
الجيزة - إدارة 6 أكتوبر 2024
- 13 We enjoyed the at 6 pm in Luxor.
a) sun cream b) sunset c) sunrise d) sunburn
- 14 They went on a trip to climb the
a) island b) lake c) waterfall d) mountain
- 15 Tourists come to the Red Sea to
a) dive b) drink c) drive d) write
القليوبية - إدارة منها 2024
- 16 We stayed in an eco-friendly house in Taba. It's a/an
a) eco-resort b) eco-lodge c) eco-village d) eco-holiday

- 17 We don't travel by planes because they cause
 a) pollution b) eco-resort c) wildlife d) tourism
- 18 "....." looks after the environment and helps local people.
 a) Eco-tourism b) Eco-destination c) Tourism d) Wildlife
- 19 We have some very nice projects in the Red Sea the coral reefs.
 a) damaging b) creating c) preserving d) causing
- 20 I went to Elephantine in Aswan.
 a) Mountain b) Waterfall c) Museum d) Island

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A) cotton – Eid – sunburned – wool – galabeya

I live in Aswan. Aswan is very beautiful, but also very hot. I always wear white (1)..... It is a long robe. It is made of (2)..... It makes me feel cool. The galabeya sleeves are long, so I don't get (3)..... I wear it for (4)..... too, but with patterns on it.

B) back – pack – excited – shorts – sunglasses

I'm Sara. I'm going to travel to Alexandria for a holiday with my family next week. We are very (1)..... We need to (2)..... our suitcases. My brother Hema needs to pack his swimming (3)..... to swim in the sea. I will take my (4)..... because it will be sunny. It will be a nice holiday.

C) history – oldest – smallest – Museum – calendar

Elephantine Island is the (1)..... part of Aswan. The island is full of (2)..... You can visit the Aswan (3)..... where you can find very old things from the island like a rare (4)..... from the reign of Thutmose III. The island is also a beautiful, calm place.

D) Tower – Museum – diving – Pyramids – beaches

Egypt is a wonderful country. There are lots to see in Egypt. In Cairo, you can visit the Egyptian (1)..... where you can learn about our ancient history. You can also see the Cairo (2)..... In Aswan, you can see awesome temples. When you go to Sharm El-Sheikh, you can see beautiful (3)..... You can go (4)..... and see the amazing coral reefs.

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 I wore a galabeya (as) stay cool.
- 2 I went to my bedroom (for) sleep.
- 3 Mayar made a cake to (celebrated).
- 4 Sameh went to a shopping center to (buys) new sneakers.
- 5 (What) did Tarek make a suit? B To wear at a wedding party.
- 6 I went to the supermarket (n) buy milk. القاهرة - إدارة شرق مدينة نصر 2024
- 7 We didn't (had) a vacation this year. بورسعيد 2024
- 8 The shoemaker made (eather, sma) shoes. الدقهلية - غرب المنصورة 2024
- 9 We (go) to the zoo yesterday. الجيزة - اليلدرشين 2024
- 10 She wore a (cotton, green) dress. القاهرة - البساتين 2024
- 11 Mona (v.p.e) studying English when her father came. القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024
- 12 Were you baking a cake at 7 pm yesterday? B No, I (weren't).
- 13 What (was) you doing at 3 pm yesterday? الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس 2024
- 14 He was (travel) to Cairo yesterday evening. الدقهلية - إدارة ميت غمر 2024
- 15 They (was) looking at photos. القاهرة - إدارة المطرية 2024
- 16 (Were) he swimming in the lake?
- 17 (You were) sleeping at 9 am yesterday?
- 18 She was listening to English songs at 10 pm (today).
- 19 Was Eslam reading a book? B Yes, he (wasn't).
- 20 Was the boy (drank) milk?

4 Punctuate the following:

- 1 i live in giza. القاهرة - إدارة المقطم 2024
- 2 Aswan is in the south of egypt القاهرة - المرح 2024
- 3 what was Ahmed doing yesterday morning الاسكندرية - إدارة عرب 2024
- 4 where did you go القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة 2024



By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:

listen, read, research, and write about different types of jobs in Ancient Egypt.

understand ecosystems.

practice using the present simple to talk about routines.

practice using "must" to talk about obligation.

understand and discuss a traditional tale.

learn to say words with diphthongs.

understand pie charts.

write about the pros and cons of different jobs.

make a poster about teamwork.

Did you know?

More than 25% of people in Egypt work in farming. Farming brings a lot of **income* to Egypt.

Find out!

Egypt has other popular jobs like engineering, teaching, tourism, **accounting*, **marketing*, **management*, and medical jobs.

**income*

دخل

المحاسبة

التسويق

الإدارة



1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



Main vocabulary

Main Vocabulary

scribe	كاتب	trader	تاجر	grains	حبوب
craftsmen/craftspeople	حرفيون	hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية	records	سجلات

Extra vocabulary

job	وظيفة	ancient (adj.)	قديم
fisherman	صياد سمك	baker	خباز
doctor	طبيب	farmer	مزارع
fields	حقول	crops	محاصيل
wheat	قمح	corn	درة
flax	بذور الكتان	paintings	رسومات / لوحات
gold (adj.)	ذهبي (مصنوع من الذهب)	jewelry	مجوهرات
sculptures	منحوتات	colorful	مُلوّن / مبهج
cooking pots	أواني الطبخ	expensive	غالي
meals	وجبات	baskets	سلال
sandals	صنادل	pharaohs	فرعون
famous	مشهور	successful	ناجح
temple	معبد	female ruler	الحاكمة
lists	قوائم	wood	خشب
linen	كتان	clay	الطين/الصلصال
signs	علامات	rows	صفوف
columns	أعمدة	medical (adj.)	طبي
medicine	دواء	craftswoman	حرفية (امراة)



Let's say it right!

لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ci) ينطقان /t/ (ش) كما في (ancient).

لاحظ أن حرفي الـ (ph) ينطقان /f/ (ف) كما في (hieroglyphs).

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
travel يسافر	traveled	weave ينسج	weaved
bake يخبز	baked	respect يحترم	respected

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
spend يقضي (وقتًا)	spent	sell يبيع	sold
become يصبح	became	keep يحافظ على	kept

Expressions and Phrases

work very hard يعمل جاهدًا	work as يعمل كـ ...
used to اعتاد على	weave clothes ينسج / يخطط الملابس
fewer people عدد أقل من الناس	know how to ... يعرف كيف ...
work outside يعمل بالخارج	take care of = look after يعتنى بـ
as well أيضًا	important for life ضروري للحياة
write ... down يدون/يسجل	keep records for يحتفظ بالسجلات لـ
do a job يقوم بوظيفة	travel up and down يسافر ذهابًا وإيابًا
a system of writing نظام للكتابة	consist of يتكون من

Take care!

بعض الأفعال تحول إلى أسماء عند إضافة er

e.g. My mom loves to **bake** cookies. (verb)

My mom is a **baker**. (noun)

Verb فعل	Job مهنة
bake يخبز	baker خباز
trade يتاجر	trader تاجر
rule يحكم	ruler حاكم
farm يزرع	farmer مزارع





Important sentences جمل هامة

- * Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a job. كل فرد في مصر القديمة كان لديه وظيفة.
- * Farmers worked in fields and planted grains like wheat, corn, and flax. كان المزارعون يعملون في الحقول ويزرعون الحبوب مثل القمح والذرة وبنجر الكتان.
- * Craftsmen made beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. صنع الحرفيون مجوهرات ومجوهرات ذهبية جميلة.
- * Scribes kept records and lists for important things. احتفظ الكتبة بسجلات وقوائم للأشياء المهمة.
- * Traders bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen, and grains. كان التجار يشترون ويبيعون أشياء مثل الذهب والخشب والكتان والحبوب.
- * Women worked at home and outside, too. عملت النساء في المنزل وبالحارج أيضًا.



Find out!

There were many other jobs in Ancient Egypt like priests, noblemen, soldiers, hunters, and artists. Most people did the job of their fathers.



كان هناك العديد من المهن الأخرى في مصر القديمة، مثل: كهنة والسلاة والحمود وأصحاب بيوتات. كان معظم الناس يعملون مثل آبائهم.



Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Farmers work in (fields – schools – home – hospitals).
- 2 The shoemaker makes (sandals – paintings – pots – sculptures).
- 3 (Traders – Craftsmen – Scribes – Doctors) could write down everything in Ancient Egypt.
- 4 Women could (bake – weave – cook – travel) clothes and baskets.
- 5 (Fruits – Vegetables – Grains – Rice) are crops like wheat and corn.
- 6 A (farmer – ruler – fisherman – baker) is the king or the queen of a country.



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

الوظائف في مصر القديمة Jobs in Ancient Egypt

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. They could work as fishermen, bakers, doctors, and traders. But most people worked as farmers. Farmers worked in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax. They grew vegetables and fruits, too.



Temple of Hatshepsut,
female ruler of Egypt,
1473-1458 BCE

عمل الناس في عصور القديمة بجد. كان كل شخص لديه وظيفة. يمكنهم العمل كصيادين، خبازين، أطباء، وتجار. ولكن معظم الناس عملوا كمزارعين. عمل المزارعون في الحقول التي كانت قريبة من منازلهم. زرعوا محاصيل، مثل القمح والذرة وفول الصويا. كما زرعوا الخضروات والفواكه، أيضاً.

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good too. They made beautiful paintings and beautiful gold jewelry and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Fewer people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. Egyptian writing was not easy to learn. Scribes spent many years learning hieroglyphs, and this was very expensive.

كان حرفيون مصريون قديماء جيدون أيضاً. لقد صنعوا لوحات جدارية جميلة وأثاثاً ذهبياً وجملاً. استخدموا الخشب لصنع ملابس جميلة. صنعوا أيضاً أواني طهي ملونة. قلة من الناس عملوا كتّاباً. عرف الكتّاب القراءة والكتابة بشكل جيد. اللغة المصرية لم تكن سهلة التعلم. عمل كتّاب قديماء في عصور قديمة جداً. كان هذا مهنة باهظة الثمن.

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals, cleaned the house, and took care of their children. Women could weave baskets, bake bread, and make sandals, and they could sell them at the market as well. They could even become pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

عملت نساء مصرية قديمة في المنزل وكان بإمكانهن العمل خارج المنزل أيضاً. طهين الطعام، نظفن المنزل، وكنّ أطفالهن. يمكن للنساء أن يمنّوا سلالاً، ويخبزن الخبز، ويصنعن أحذية، ويمكنهن بيعها في السوق. يمكنهن أيضاً أن يصبحن فرعوناً. كانت حتشبسوت واحدة من أشهر الملكات في مصر القديمة.

Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful!

عرف الجميع في مصر القديمة أن العمل مهم للحياة، لذلك كان قدماء المصريين ناجحين للغاية!

Check

Choose the correct answer:

- (Traders – Scribes – Farmers – Doctors) could buy and sell everything in Ancient Egypt.
- (Traders – Scribes – Farmers – Fishermen) knew how to read and write well.
- Hatshepsut was a (trader – pharaoh – scribe – fisherman) in Ancient Egypt.
- The Ancient Egyptians were very (lazy – bored – tired – successful).



3. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر، وقل:



Definitions

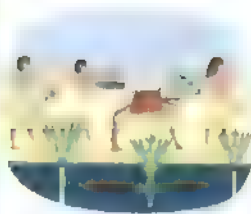


scribe

كاتب

People with this job were very important in Ancient Egypt. They could write everything down. They kept records and lists for important things.

الأشخاص الذين ساعدوا هذه الوظيفة كانوا مهمين للغاية في مصر القديمة. يمكنهم تسجيل كل شيء، فقد احتسبوا سجلات وقوائم لأشياء مهمة.

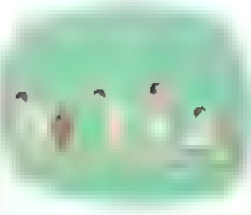


trader

تاجر

People who did this job traveled up and down the Nile. They bought and sold things like gold, wood, linen, and grains.

الأشخاص الذين ساعدوا هذه الوظيفة كانوا مهمين للغاية في مصر القديمة. يمكنهم تسجيل كل شيء، فقد احتسبوا سجلات وقوائم لأشياء مهمة.

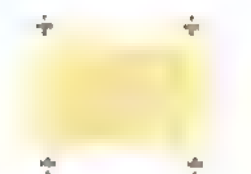


craftsman

جزي

If you were good at making things, this was a good job for you. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold.

كانت هذه في الواقع وظيفة جيدة. الأشخاص الذين ساعدوا هذه الوظيفة كانوا مهمين للغاية في مصر القديمة. يمكنهم تسجيل كل شيء، فقد احتسبوا سجلات وقوائم لأشياء مهمة.

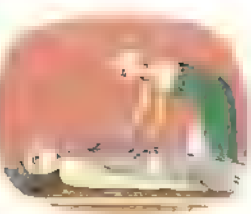


hieroglyphs

اللغة الهيروغليفية

A system of writing which consisted of about 500 signs, written in rows and columns. People used it in Ancient Egypt.

نظام كتابة كان يتكون من حوالي 500 علامة، مكتوبة في صفوف وأعمدة. استخدمها الناس في مصر القديمة.



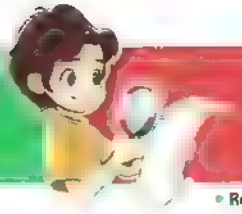
doctor

طبيب

Both men and women could do this job, too. You had to go to medical school to have this job. You had to look after people who were ill and make medicine.

استطاع كل من الرجال والنساء القيام بهذه الوظيفة أيضاً. كان عليك الذهاب إلى مدرسة طبية لتتمكن من القيام بهذه الوظيفة. كان عليك أن تعتني بالمرضى وتعالجهم.

Practice



Lesson 1



• Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Ancient Egyptian women cooked
a) pots b) meals c) bread d) corn
- 2 They of their children.
a) looked for b) took care c) looked at d) took turns
- 3 Women could weave and bake bread.
a) paintings b) sculptures c) baskets d) corn
- 4 Hatshepsut was a famous in Ancient Egypt.
a) king b) queen c) scribe d) trader

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Ancient Egyptians used to write everything down. محافظة الإسكندرية - إدارة الحمر ك 2024
a) English b) hieroglyphics c) math d) Arabic
- 2 Scribes kept for important things.
a) sculptures b) pots c) paintings d) records
- 3 Traders could travel and down the Nile. محافظة الجيزة - إدارة الدقي 2024
a) up b) in c) under d) out
- 4 A wrote everything down in Ancient Egypt. محافظة الإسماعيلية 2024
a) scribe b) doctor c) farmer d) craftsman
- 5 Hieroglyphs consisted of about 500
a) letters b) numbers c) signs d) shapes
- 6 made things from clay, wood, and gold.
a) Craftsmen b) Scribes c) Doctors d) Pharaohs
- 7 is the system of writing in Ancient Egypt.
a) Lists b) Hieroglyphs c) Grains d) Records
- 8 I want to be a I like making beautiful pots and clay. الشرقية - إدارة العاشر 2024
a) doctor b) craftsman c) trader d) scribe

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rivers — records — hieroglyphs — Scribes — papyrus محافظة الشرقية - إدارة بلبيس 2024

There were many jobs in Ancient Egypt. (1) ... wrote everything down. There were scribe schools where they could learn to read and write well. They used a system of pictures called (2) ... to do so. They wrote on pyramids, tombs, statues, and (3) ... They wanted to make sure they had (4) ... of everything.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

People in Ancient Egypt worked very hard. Everyone had a job. Most people worked as farmers. They worked in fields. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made beautiful paintings and gold jewelry. Hieroglyphs were not easy to learn. Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. They cooked meals, cleaned the houses and took care of their children. They could weave baskets and make sandals to sell at the market. Ancient Egyptians were very successful.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Hieroglyphs were not to learn.
a) easy b) difficult c) tall d) short
- 2 Ancient Egyptians were very
a) bad b) successful c) sad d) wrong

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did Ancient Egyptian craftsmen make?
.....
- 4 Where did women sell sandals and baskets?
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 clothes – to – Craftsmen – beautiful – weave – used.
.....
- 2 queen – in – Hatshepsut – Ancient Egypt – a famous – was.
.....
- 3 of – Hieroglyphs – signs – 500 – about – consisted.
.....
- 4 corn – planted – like – and – Farmers – wheat – grains.
.....

6 Punctuate the following:

- 1 The Ancient egyptians were very successful
.....
- 2 Traders traveled up and down the Nile
.....



Ecosystems النظم البيئية

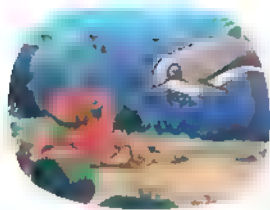


1. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أسر وقل:



Main vocabulary



a marine ecosystem

نظام بيئي بحري



a freshwater ecosystem

نظام بيئي لمياه عذبة



a desert ecosystem

نظام بيئي صحراوي



a rockpool ecosystem

نظام بيئي بئير الصخرة

Living things كائنات حية



crab

سرطان البحر



fish

سمك



insect

حشرة



seaweed

عشب بحري



tree

شجرة

Non-living things أشياء غير حية



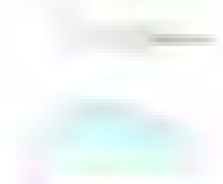
rocks



sand



sunlight



water

Extra vocabulary

source	مصدر	natural world	عالم الطبيعة	connected (adj.)	متصل
connection	اتصال	area	منطقة	alive (adj.)	على قيد الحياة
Amazon rainforest	غابات الأمازون الاستوائية	shelter	مأوى (ملجأ)	menu	قائمة الطعام
boss	قائد / زعيم	sharp (adj.)	حاد	knife	سكين
manager	مدير	restaurant	مطعم	delicious (adj.)	شهي
customers	عملاء / زبائن	university	جامعة	hippo	فرس النهر

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
contain يحتوى على	contained	need يحتاج	needed
survive ينجو (يبقى على قيد الحياة)	survived	check يفحص	checked
prepare يعدد / يجهز	prepared	tidy up يرتب	tidied up

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
catch يمسك	caught	fly يُطير	flew
drive يقود	drove	wake up يوقظ	woke up
forget ينسى	forgot	cut يقطع / يقص	cut

Expressions and Phrases

on Earth	على سطح الأرض	the same	متشابهان
(be) called	يُسمى / يُدعى	work together	يعمل معًا
catch the bus	يلحق بالأتوبيس	fly a plane	يقود الطائرة
make sure	يتأكد	at midday	في منتصف النهار
look after	يرعى / يعتنى به	give a bath	يحمم

Definitions

living	something that is alive	شيء حي
non-living	something that isn't alive	شيء غير حي
ecosystem	all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place	كل الحيوانات والنباتات والصخور... إلخ في مكان ما
rockpool	a small area of water that may contain rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc.	مساحة صغيرة من الماء بها صخور وسرطان البحر والأعشاب البحرية... إلخ

Take care!

e.g. rock + pool = rockpool
sun + light = sunlight

بعض من الأسماء المركبة يتكون عند إضافة اسم + اسم مثل:
rain + forest = rainforest
sea + weed = seaweed



Think!

We need food, water, and shelter to survive.





2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The River Nile is the most important source of fresh water in Egypt. A lot of plants and animals live near or in the river.

النيل هو أهم مصدر للمياه العذبة في مصر. تعيش الكثير من النباتات والحيوانات بالقرب من نهر النيل.

What is an ecosystem? ما هو النظام البيئي؟



a marine ecosystem

Everything in the natural world is connected. This connection between living and non-living things is called an ecosystem.

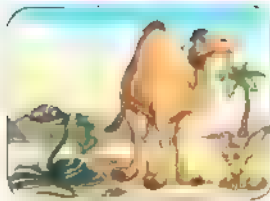
كل شيء في عالم الطبيعة متصل. يسمى هذا الاتصال بين الأشياء الحية وغير الحية بالنظام البيئي.



a freshwater ecosystem

Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest.

يمكن أن تكون النظم البيئية صغيرة، مثل بركة صخرية، أو يمكن أن تكون كبيرة جدًا، مثل غابات الأمازون الاستوائية.



a desert ecosystem

The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed.

The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight.

الكائنات الحية في البركة الصخرية هي: الأسماك وسرطان البحر والاعشاب البحرية. الكائنات غير الحية هي: الصخور والماء والرمل والضوء الشمسي.



a rockpool ecosystem

All these things work together to make an ecosystem. There are lots of different ecosystems on Earth.

كل هذه الأشياء تعمل معًا لنظام بيئي. هناك الكثير من النظم البيئية المختلفة على كوكب الأرض.



1 What is an ecosystem?

2 What are the non-living things in a rockpool?



Language Focus

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

Usage استخدام

We use the present simple to talk about habits, routines, and things we do every day.

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للحديث عن العادات والروتين والأشياء التي نقوم بها كل يوم.

Affirmative Form صيغة المؤكد

I/ We/ You/ They	... (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر)
He/ She/ It	... (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) + (s/ es/ ies)

e.g. - I **drive** to work at 10 am.

- He **cuts** the vegetables with a sharp knife.

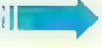
s



e.g. She **eats** fruits every day.

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):

es



e.g. She **catches** a bus to school.

الأفعال المنتهية بـ (x) (ss) (tt) (ff) (zz) يضاف لها (es):

ies



e.g. He **flies** a plane.

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف (y) يسبقه حرف ساكن، يتم حذف الـ (y) ويضاف للفعل (ies):



إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف الـ (y) يسبقه حرف متحرك (a, e, i, o, u)، أضف حرف الـ (s) فقط:

e.g. He **plays** computer games on the weekend.

Negative Form صيغة المنك

I/ We/ You/ They	don't	... (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر)
He/ She/ It	doesn't	

e.g. - I **don't** drink milk.

- He **doesn't** walk to school.

Yes/No Questions

Question السؤال	Do	I/ you/ we/ they	(inf.) (المفعول في المصدر) ...?
	Does	he/ she/ it	
Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject	do/does.
	No		don't/doesn't.

eg Do you **come** to work?
B: Yes, I **do**.

Does the child **play** computer games?
B: No, he **doesn't**.

Wh- Questions

Wh- word كلمة الاستفهام	do	I/ you/ we/ they	(inf.) ...?
	does	he/ she/ it	

eg What **do** you **do** on the weekend?
B: I **play** football.

When **does** Dad **arrive** home?
B: He **arrives** at 6 pm.



Choose the correct answer:

- I (to eat – eating – eats – eat) fruit.
- My brother and I (drink – to drink – drinks – drinking) coffee at 11 am.
- At midday, the manager (check – checks – checking – to check) the restaurant.
- My sister (study – studies – studying – to study) at Mansoura University.
- The boy (don't – doesn't – isn't – wasn't) watch TV at 6 pm every day.
- (Does – Is – Are – Do) you eat yogurt for breakfast?
- How (was – is – does – do) Sara go to school?
- They (aren't – don't – doesn't – haven't) visit their grandmother every Friday.
- My sister doesn't (go – going – goes – went) to bed early every day.
- We don't (listen – listens – listening – to listen) to music every day.

must / mustn't يجب أن / يجب ألا

We use 'must' when we talk about something that we have to do.

عندما نتحدث عن شيء يجب علينا القيام به نستخدم «must» بمعنى «يجب أن».

We use 'mustn't' (must not) when we are not allowed to do something.

وعندما لا يسمح لنا بفعل شيء ما نستخدم «mustn't» بمعنى «يجب ألا».

Positive Form

Subject | must | (inf.) ... (الفعل في المصدر)

- e.g: - I **must** buy some bananas.
- We **must** do the English homework.

Negative Form

Subject | mustn't (must not) | (inf.) ... (الفعل في المصدر)

- e.g: - He **mustn't** eat in the classroom.
- They **mustn't** walk on the grass.

Walid looks after hippos. He **must** make sure they are happy and healthy. He **must** prepare their food. He **must** give them fresh water to drink. He **must** give them a bath. He **must even** clean their teeth!

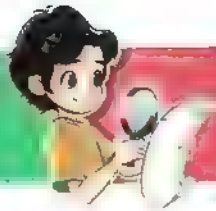
وسيد يقي نافرس الهير، يجب أن يأكد من أنهم سعداء وبصحة جيدة. يجب أن يعد طعامهم. يجب أن يعطيهم ماءً غدياً للشرب. يجب أن يحممهم. يجب عليه حتى ينظف أسنانهم!



Choose the correct answer:

- 1 We (**must** – mustn't – should – are) talk in the library.
- 2 I must (buys – buying – bought – **buy**) some oranges.
- 3 You (mustn't – should – can – **must**) shout in the classroom.
- 4 He (shou **dn't** – must – mustn't – can't) listen to the teacher.
- 5 I (mustn't – must – can't – **shou **ldn't****) drink water every day.
- 6 You must (giving – gives – gave – **give**) hippos fresh water to drink.

Practice



Lesson 2



Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1 Use a to cut the watermelon.

الشرقية - إدارة الحسينية 2024

- a) plate b) knife c) spoon d) fork

2 I loved this meal. It's

- a) bad b) delicious c) unhealthy d) terrible

3 A/An means all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place. البحيرة - إدارة إيتاي البارود 2024

- a) river b) living c) ecosystem d) non-living

4 The River Nile is the most important source of water in Egypt.

الجيزة - إدارة العمرانية 2024

- a) salt b) fresh c) bad d) sand

5 The prepared a lovely meal.

الإسكندرية - إدارة المتنزه 2024

- a) teacher b) farmer c) chef d) fisherman

6 is something that isn't alive.

بورسعيد 2024

- a) Living b) Rainforest c) Non-living d) Rockpool

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

rainforest - crabs - sand - connection - eco-tourist

The (1) between living and non-living things is called ecosystem. They can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon (2) The living things in a rockpool are fish, (3), and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, (4), and sunlight. All these things work together to make an ecosystem.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 grass - mustn't - You - the - on - walk.

2 seaweed - living - Grass - things - and - are.

3 a small - A rockpool - area - water - of - is.

بورسعيد 2024

4 library - talk - mustn't - the - We - in.

الشرقية - إدارة المعاش 2024

4 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- 1 Mona (catch) the bus to Cairo every day. القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة 2024
- 2 A teacher..... (work) in a school. بورسعيد 2024
- 3 I don't (watching) TV. القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024
- 4 My sister doesn't (studies) at Mansoura University.
- 5 Walid (not listen) to music every day.
- 6 We must (helping) our parents. الشرقية - إدارة منيا القمح 2024
- 7 We mustn't (talk) in the library. الشرقية - إدارة أبو كبير 2024
- 8 You (must) walk on the grass.
- 9 We (mustn't) look after the environment. الشرقية - إدارة أولاد صقر 2024
- 10 (Does) they like vegetables?
- 11 Mrs Soha (work) in a school. الإسماعيلية 2024
- 12 Emad always (speak) English very well. البحيرة - إدارة إيتاي البارود 2024
- 13 He must (tidy) his bedroom every day. الشرقية - إدارة ههيا 2024
- 14 You (must) eat in the library. الشرقية - إدارة أولاد صقر 2024
- 15 I must (doing) my English homework. الشرقية - إدارة الصالحية الجديدة 2024

5 Punctuate the following:

1 what do we need to survive

you must do your homework

الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024

6

"Ecosystem"

- What is an ecosystem?
- Are all ecosystems the same?
- What kinds of ecosystems are there?





Story



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

grasshopper	جراد	relaxing (adj.)	مسترخ
fence	سور	boring	ممل

Extra vocabulary

spring	فصل الربيع	fields	حقول	lovely	رائع
butterflies	فراشات	however	رغم ذلك	lazy	كسول
strange (adj.)	غريب	sound	صوت	maybe	ربما
fall	فصل الخريف	winter	فصل الشتاء	conversation	محادثة
future	مستقبل	surprised	متفاجئ	moral	الدرس الأخلاق

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
buzz يطن	buzzed	rest يستريح	rested
reply يرد	replied	hop يقفز	hopped
harvest يحصد	harvested	stop يتوقف	stopped
remember يتذكر	remembered	knock يخط / يطرق	knocked
prefer يفضل	preferred	ignore يتجاهل	ignored

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
shine يشرق	shone	fly يطير	flew
spend يقضي	spent	hear يسمع	heard
have يمتلك	had	understand يفهم	understood
teach يُعلم	taught	find يجد	found

Expressions and Phrases

full of مملء بـ	the bees are buzzing the nحل يطن	work hard يعمل بجد
most of his time معظم وقته	resting against a tree يستريح مستندًا على شجرة	find out يكتشف
look over ينظر من فوق	carry on with my work أكمل عملي	have to do مضطر أن تفعل
think about يفكر في	hop away يقفز بعيدًا	grow well تنمو بشكل جيد
knock on يطرق على	come in يدخل	prepare for يستعد لـ

The Ant and the Grasshopper النملة والجراد



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

It's spring. The sun is shining and the fields and gardens are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat. It's a lovely day. The bees are buzzing and the butterflies are flying in the sun. The ants, however, are working hard.



إنه الربيع. الشمس مشرقة والحقول والحدائق مليئة بالزهور لماكلها. الحيوانات والحشرات. إنه يوم جميل. الحقل يشرق وتسابطظر في الشمس ومع ذلك، فإن النمل يعمل بجد.

The lazy grasshopper spends most of his time relaxing. He doesn't like to work. Today, he is resting against a tree when he hears a strange sound. He wants to find out what it is. He looks over the garden fence.



يقضي الجراد الكسول معظم وقته مسترخياً. لا يحب العمل. اليوم، كان يستريح على شجرة عندما سمع صوتاً غريباً. يريد أن يعرف ما هو. إنه ينظر من فوق سور الحديقة.

"What are you doing, Ant?" asks the grasshopper. "I'm working," replies the ant. "But it's a beautiful day," says the grasshopper. "Why don't you stop working and we can have some fun?" "Thank you, but I need to carry on with my work," says the ant.



يسأل الجراد: «ما تفعلين، أنثى النملة؟». تجيب النملة: «أنا أعمل». يقول الجراد: «إنه يوم جميل. لماذا توقفت عن العمل ويمكنك التحصيل على بعض الفرح؟» تقول النملة: «شكراً لك، لكني بحاجة إلى مواصلة العمل».

'But working is so boring,' replies the grasshopper. 'Maybe,' says the ant, 'but it's something we all have to do. We must think about the future, not just today.' The grasshopper didn't understand and so he just hops away.



جواب الجراد: «لكن العمل ممل جداً». تقول النملة: «ربما، لكن هذا شيء يجب علينا جميعاً القيام به. يجب أن نفكر في المستقبل، ليس اليوم فقط». لم يفهم الجراد ولذا فقد هرب بعيداً.

Soon, it is fall. The ant has worked hard and all her crops have grown well. The ant doesn't stop working until he has harvested all the food and taken it inside for the winter.

سرعان ما حل الخريف. قد عملت النملة بجد، وجمع جميع محاصيلها بشكل جيد. لم تتوقف النملة عن العمل حتى حصدت كل الطعام وأخبرته إلى الداخل لفصل الشتاء.



Read and write

Soon, it is winter and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food and he can't find any. Suddenly, he remembers the conversation he had with the ant. He knocks on the ant's door.

"I understand you now, Ant. You worked and now you have food. I didn't work and now I'm hungry." "Come in," says the ant. "Yes, it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too."



سرعان ما، يأتي شتاء ويكون باردًا جدًا. الحشرات جائعة، ليس لديه أي طعام ولا يستطيع العثور على أي طعام. فجأة، يتذكر المحادثة التي أجراها مع النملة. طرق باب النملة. "أنا أفهمك الآن، أنت عملت والآن لديك طعام. لم أعمل والآن أنا جائع." "أدخل"، يقول النملة. "نعم، من الجيد الاستمتاع، ولكن من المهم جدًا أن تعمل بجد أيضًا."

The moral of the story

It's important to work to prepare for the future.

Check

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 The (ant - butterfly - bee - grasshopper) spends his time relaxing.
- 2 The bees are (singing - shouting - buzzing - screaming) all the day.
- 3 The (schools - gardens - hospitals - libraries) are full of flowers for the animals and insects to eat.



Pronunciation



3. Listen, point, and say:

استمع، أشر وقل:



Diphthong: is a sound formed by the combination of two vowels in a single syllable.

صوت يتكون من مزيج من حرفين متحركين في مقطع لفظي واحد.

/aɪ/

wh. لماذا

light ضوء

buy يشتري

eye عين

tr يحاول

/ɔɪ/

boy ولد

enjoy يستمتع

noise ضوضاء

point يشير

toy لعبة

/aʊ/

down أسفل

town بلدة

brown بني

loud صاحب

mouse فأر

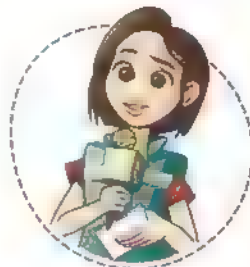
The suffix “-ist” means ‘someone who does something’. We often use it in words for jobs.

e.g. dent + ist = dentist



biologist

عالمة احياء



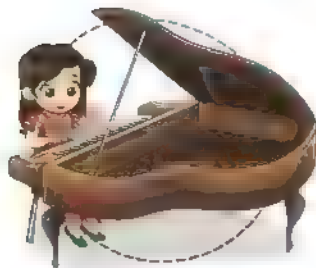
journalist

صحفي



receptionist

موظف استقبال



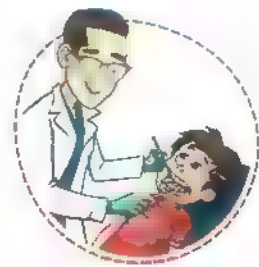
pianist

عازفة بيانو



scientist

عالم



dentist

طبيب أسنان



4. Read and notice:

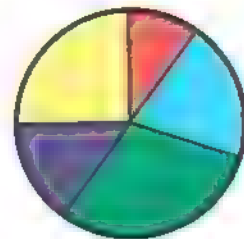
اقرأ ولاحظ:

A pie chart is a way of showing information.



This is a pie.

هذه فطيرة.



This is a pie chart.

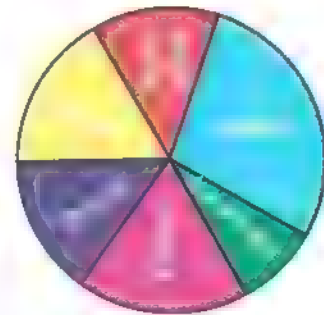
هذا مخطط دائري، تأخذ شكل لفطيرة.

e.g.

What job do you want to do?

ما الوظيفة التي تريد أن تقوم بها؟

police officer	
teacher	
farmer	
animal keeper	
dentist	
doctor	



Do you want to work indoors or outdoors?

هل تريد العمل في الداخل أو في الهواء الطلق؟

indoors	7
outdoors	3

Do you want to wear a uniform at work?

أأري موحدة في العمل؟

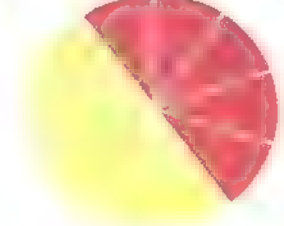
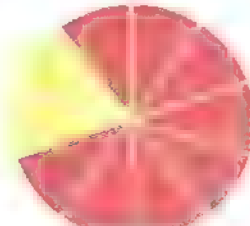
yes	2
no	8

Do you want to work with animals?

yes	1
no	9

Do you want to work in an office?

yes	5
no	5





1 Listen and write the correct answer from a, b, c or d.



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The grasshopper was
a) active b) lazy c) strange d) kind
- 2 The grasshopper thought work was
a) interesting b) exciting c) boring d) relaxing
- 3 Now, it's, and it is very cold.
a) summer b) fall c) spring d) winter
- 4 The grasshopper doesn't have any
a) food b) water c) time d) money

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Ali on the door before he came in. الشرقية - إدارة غرب الزقازيق 2024
a) knocked b) understood c) came d) had
- 2 We crops when they grow.
a) shine b) spend c) hear d) harvest
- 3 I can't climb the garden because it is high. الشرقية - إدارة مهبيا 2024
a) stairs b) fence c) table d) chair
- 4 The are buzzing all the day. البحيرة - إدارة إيناي البارود 2024
a) snakes b) ants c) cats d) bees
- 5 The works in hotels. القليوبية - إدارة بنها 2024
a) doctor b) vet c) teacher d) receptionist
- 6 The takes care of our teeth.
a) biologist b) dentist c) scientist d) pianist
- 7 She is good at playing the piano. She is a الشرقية - إدارة أولاد صقر 2024
a) scientist b) pianist c) geologist d) journalist
- 8 A studies our bodies and all living things.
a) dentist b) journalist c) pianist d) biologist

3 Read the sentences and write the correct word in the box.

dentist – receptionist – hotels – music – biologist

Different people have different jobs. The (1) works in hotels, offices, companies, and hospitals. He helps you with the information you need. The (2) takes care of our teeth. The (3) studies our bodies and all living things around us. The pianist studies (4) and plays the best music for us.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

A long time ago, an ant and a grasshopper lived in a garden. The grasshopper always spent his time relaxing in the garden. His friend, the ant, was always busy working. The grasshopper always made fun of the hardworking ant. Soon, the winter came. It was too cold, and the grasshopper was hungry. The ant was kind and let the grasshopper come in and gave him food. The grasshopper learned that it's fine to have fun, but it's also very important to work hard, too.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The grasshopper always spent his time in the garden.
a) relaxing b) working c) harvesting d) planting
- The underlined words 'have fun' mean
a) eat b) study c) sleep d) enjoy

Answer the following questions:

- What was the ant always doing?
.....
- What do you learn from the story?
.....

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 are – The – working – ants – hard.

الإسكندرية – إدارة وسط 2024

2 like – The lazy – work – to – doesn't – grasshopper.

3 want – I – to – dentist – be – a.

الإسكندرية – إدارة المتزه 2024

4 the – think – future – We – about – must.

6 Punctuate the following:

- The grasshopper doesn't have any food
.....
- why don't you stop working
.....



1. Listen and say:

استمع وقل:



Main vocabulary

vet	طبيب بيطرى	computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر	operation	عملية جراحية
office job	وظيفة مكتبية	school concert	حفلة مدرسية	teammate	زميل في الفريق

Extra vocabulary

job	وظيفة	injured	مُصاب	inside	بالداخل
dirty	متسخ / قدر	countryside	الريف	the worst	الأسوأ
outside	بالخارج	problems	مشاكل	team	فريق
the best	الأفضل	solutions	حلول	report	تقرير
teamwork	عمل جماعي	experiment	تجربة علمية	aim	هدف

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
check يفحص	checked	mind يمانع	mind	scare يخيف	scared
solve يحل	solved	agree يتفق	agree	prefer يفضل	preferred

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
get يصح	got	know يعرف	knew	write يكتب	wrote
read يقرأ	read	bring يُحضر	brought	win يفوز	won

Expressions and Phrases

work with يعمل مع	make ... better يجعل ... بحالة أفضل	check on يفحص / يتحقق من
I don't mind أنا لا أمانع	I'm used to أنا معتاد على	the worst part of أسوأ جزء من
get sick يمرض	in the night في الليل	get out of bed يهبط من السرير
keen on يحب	solving problems حل المشاكل	I do both! أنا أفعل كليهما!
work out يحل / يكتشف	traveling long distances السفر لمسافات طويلة	making new friends تكوين صداقات جديدة
do an experiment يجرى تجربة علمية	do something together تقوم بشيء ما معًا	by yourself بمفردك

Important sentences جمل هامة

- * Rana is a vet, and she works with animals. رنا طبيبة بيطرية، وتعمل مع الحيوانات.
- * Rana works inside, and sometimes she goes to people's houses to check on animals. تعمل رنا في الداخل، وأحيانًا تذهب إلى بيوت الناس لتفحص الحيوانات.
- * Sherif is a computer programmer, and he works in a team of 16 people. شريف مبرمج كمبيوتر ويعمل ضمن فريق مكون من 16 شخصًا.
- * They don't always agree, but they work out the best solutions. لا يتفقون دائمًا، لكنهم يتوصلون إلى أفضل الحلول.



Writing

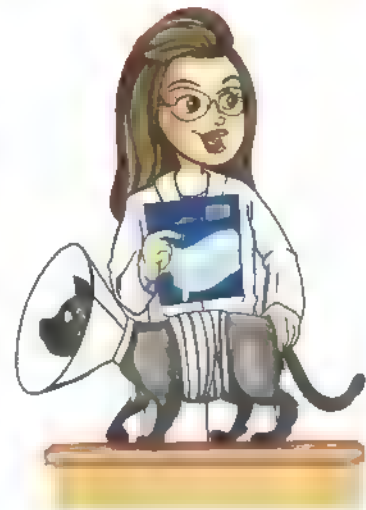
What are Rana and Sherif's jobs? ما هي وظائف رنا وشريف؟



2. Look and read:

انظر وامرأ:

My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job.
 If animals are sick or injured, I help to make them better.
 Some days I work inside and people bring their animals to me.
 If an animal needs an operation, the room has to be very, very clean.
 On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind!
 What's the worst part of the job? It's when an animal gets sick in the night and I have to get out of bed!



اسمي رنا. أنا أعمل مع الحيوانات وأحب عملي. إذا كانت الحيوانات مريضة أو جرحية، أساعد على جعلها أفضل.
 في بعض الأيام أعمل داخلًا ويطعمونني بحيواناتهم إلي. إذا احتاجت الحيوانات لعملية جراحية، يجب أن يكون المكان نظيفًا جدًا، جدًا.
 في بعض الأيام، أذهب إلى منازل الناس أو المزارع للتحقق من الحيوانات. يمكن أن يكون قذرًا في بعض الأماكن، لكنني لا أمانع! ما هو أسوأ جزء من العمل؟ إنه عندما يمرض الحيوان ليلاً وأضطر إلى الخروج من السرير.

Hello, I'm Sherif. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare me! I'm not keen on being outside, so I wanted an office job.
 When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving problems. So, in my job, I do both!
 I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree, but we work out the best solutions.



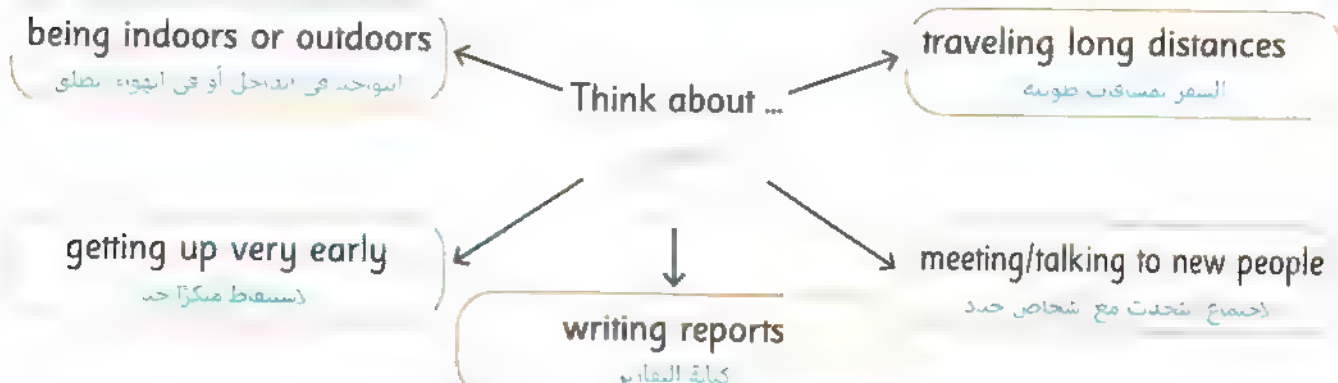
What does Rana like about working with animals?

SB

Why did Sherif not want to work with animals?

SB

When you're thinking about a job, it's important to think about what you **like and dislike**.



It's also important to think about what you're **good at** and what you're **not so good at**.



How to write about a job you want and a job you don't want:

عن الوظيفة التي تريدها والوظيفة التي لا تريدها:

When I'm older, I want to be a (معلمة / معلم) because (أحب). I think this is a good job for me because I like (التعامل مع الناس). I'm good at (الكتابة) and I enjoy (التدريس). I don't want to be a (مهندس / مهندسة) because I'm not good at (الحل). Also, I don't really enjoy (العمل في فريق).

e.g. When I'm older, I want to be a teacher of English because I like English. I think this is a good job for me because I like meeting new people. I'm good at reading lots of information and I enjoy teaching. I don't want to be an engineer because I'm not good at solving problems. Also, I don't really enjoy being outside.



Project

Teamwork العمل الجماعي



3. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Teamwork



I work in a team in science when we're doing an experiment.

أنا أعمل مع فريق في علم الأحياء عندما نقوم بتجربة.

I work in a team when I'm playing football.

أنا أعمل مع فريق عندما أكون أتلعب كرة قدم.



I work in a team when I help Mom in the kitchen at home.

أنا أعمل مع فريق عندما أكون أساعد أمي في المطبخ في البيت.



I work in a team for the school concert.

أنا أعمل مع فريق عندما أكون أناغني في حفل المدرسة.

When you work in a team, you work with other people to do something together. For example, the aim of a football team is to win. You work with teammates to do this. You can't win a football match by yourself!



1

Choose the correct word or phrase to complete the sentence.

- 1 When you work in, you work with other people.
a) a room b) a team c) a game d) a class
- 2 I always work with my friends. We work
a) yourself b) alone c) together d) myself
- 3 I asked my mom to let me play and she
a) talked b) checked c) agreed d) scared
- 4 I don't like dogs. They me.
a) scare b) help c) love d) like
- 5 We're in the science team. We're doing a/an
a) cake b) experiment c) meal d) concert
- 6 She practices hard for the final match to
a) win b) lose c) grow d) fly
- 7 I work in a team for the school We play music together.
a) concert b) team c) exam d) classroom
- 8 I want to be a because I enjoy solving problems.
a) nurse b) cleaner
c) gardener d) computer programmer
- 9 A helps sick animals.
a) scribe b) craftsman c) teacher d) vet

الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب 2024

2

Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

office – solutions – problems – programmer – game

I'm Sherif. I'm a computer (1) I'm not keen on being outside, so I wanted an (2) job. When I was young, I loved playing computer games. I also really enjoy solving (3) I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree, but we work out the best (4)

3

Read the text and answer the questions.

الإسكندرية - إدارة برج العرب 2024

My name's Rana. I work with animals and I love my job. If animals are sick or injured, I help to make them better. Some days I work inside and people bring their animals to me. If an animal needs an operation, the room has to be very clean. On other days, I go to people's houses or farms to check on the animals. It can be very dirty in some places, but I don't mind! The worst part of the job is when an animal gets sick in the night and I have to get out of bed!



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 The word "injured" gives the same meaning of being
a) strong b) hurt c) well d) healthy
- 2 Rana's job is to check on the
a) students b) animals c) subjects d) houses

Answer the following questions:

- 3 How must the room be before an operation?

- 4 What's the worst part of Rana's job?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 keen – I – outside – on – being – am not.

- 2 work – We – out – the – solutions – best.

- 3 win – by yourself – you – a football – can't – match.

- 4 didn't – animals – I – to – work – want – with.

5 Punctuate the following:

do you want to work with animals

الشرقية - إدارة أبو كبير 2024

6 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

"A job you want to do"

بوزسميد 2024

مجاب عند
صفحة
109

What is it? – Why do you want to do it? – Is it important? .

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة.

Lesson (1)

scribe	كاتب	trader	تاجر
grains	حبوب	craftsmen/ craftspeople	حرفيون
hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية	records	سجلات
ancient	قديم	successful	ناجح
flax	بذور الكتان	paintings	رسومات
jewelry	مجوهرات	sculptures	منحوتات
sandals	صنادل	pharaohs	فرعون
female ruler	الحاكمة	signs	علامات
cooking pot	إناء الطبخ	lists	قوائم

Lesson (2)

a marine ecosystem	نظام بيئي بحري	a freshwater ecosystem	نظام بيئي للمياه العذبة
a desert ecosystem	نظام بيئي صحراوي	a rockpool ecosystem	نظام بيئي لبركة الصخور
crab	سرطان البحر	seaweed	أعشاب بحرية
rocks	صخور	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
source	مصدر	natural world	عالم الطبيعة
connected	متصل	connection	تصال
Amazon rainforest	غابات الأمازون الاستوائية	shelter	مأوى (ملجأ)

Lesson (3)

grasshopper	جرد	relaxing	مسترخ
fence	سور	boring	ممل
spring	فصل الربيع	fields	حقول
lovely	رائع	butterflies	فراشات
lazy	كسول	fall	فصل الخريف
conversation	محادثة	future	مستقبل
surprised	متفاجئ	moral	الدروس الأخلاقية
winter	فصل الشتاء	strange	غريب
journalist	صحفية	scientist	عالم
receptionist	موظف استقبال	dentist	طبيب أسنان
biologist	عالمة أحياء	pianist	عارفة بيانو

Lessons (4 & 5)

vet	طبيب بيطري	computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر
operation	عملية جراحية	office job	وظيفة مكتبية
school concert	حفلة مدرسية	teammate	زميل في الفريق
injured	مصاب	dirty	متسخ / قذر
countryside	الريف	problems	مشاكل
team	فريق	solutions	حلول
report	تقرير	teamwork	عمل جماعي
experiment	تجربة علمية	aim	هدف

Language Focus

The Present Simple Tense

I/ We/ You/ They	(nf)
He/ She/ It	(inf) + (s/ es/ es)

e.g. I **drive** to work at 10 am.

He **cuts** the vegetables with a sharp knife.

I/ We/ You/ They	don't
He/ She/ It	doesn't

e.g. I **don't drink** milk

He **goes** to school

must / mustn't

Subject + must / mustn't

e.g. I **must buy** some bananas.

Subject

e.g. He **mustn't** in the classroom





تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

.....	حرفي	.....	طبيب
.....	كاتب	.....	اللغة الهيروغليفية
.....	ناحر	.....	حبوب
.....	سجلات	.....	معبد

Lesson 2

.....	صخور	.....	سرطان البحر
.....	رمال	.....	مصدر
.....	مأوى/ ملجأ	.....	ضوء الشمس
.....	أعشاب بحرية	.....	متصل
.....	حشرة	.....	النظم البيئية

Lesson 3

.....	مسترخ	.....	جراد
.....	ممل	.....	سور
.....	بلدة	.....	لعبة
.....	فأر	.....	الدرس الأخلاقي
.....	ضوضاء	.....	ضوء
.....	عالمية أحياء	.....	فصل الشتاء
.....	موظف استقبال	.....	صحفى
.....	عالم	.....	عازفة بيانو

Lessons 4 & 5

.....	مشاكل	.....	طبيب بيطرى
.....	حلول	.....	مبرمج كمبيوتر
.....	عمل جماعى	.....	عطية جراحية
.....	فريق	.....	وظيفة مكتبية
.....	تجربة علمية	.....	حفلة مدرسية
.....	مصاب	.....	زميل فى الفريق

WRITING TIME

تجميعاً لأهم
موضوعات
الوحدة

لكي تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to write about a job in Ancient Egypt:

- 1 Ancient Egyptian (الوظيفة) were (صفة)
- 2 They made (مصنوعات)
- 3 They used to (استخدموها)
- 4 They used (أدوات) to make (مصنوعات قاموا بها)

Craftsmen

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good. They made beautiful paintings, beautiful gold jewelry, and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold. They used the gold to make beautiful jewelry.

How to write about ecosystems:

- 1 An ecosystem is (تعريف)
- 2 Ecosystems can be (صغيرة)، like (مثال)
- 3 They can be (كبيرة)، like (مثال)
- 4 The living things in a (بيئة) are (الكائنات الحية)
- 5 The non-living things are (الكائنات غير الحية)

Ecosystems

An ecosystem is all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool. They can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight.

How to write about a job you want to do:

- 1 I want to be (مهنة)
- 2 I don't like (مهنة)
- 3 I like (مهنة)
- 4 I'm good at (مهارة)
- 5 I'm not good at (مهارة)

A job I want to do

I want to be a computer programmer. I wanted an office job. I don't like to work with animals. I don't like being outside. I like playing computer games. I also really like solving problems. I'm good at working with other people and numbers. I'm not good at studying science.

1 Match the words to their meanings:

A

- 1 living
- 2 non-living
- 3 ecosystem
- 4 rockpool

B

- a. () something that isn't alive
- b. () all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place
- c. () a small area of water that may contain rocks, crabs, seaweed, etc.
- d. () something that is alive

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the present simple:

- 1 Mrs Soha (work) in a school.
- 2 My sister (study) at Mansoura University.
- 3 We (play) computer games on the weekend.
- 4 I (eat) yogurt and cheese for breakfast.
- 5 Mr Said (catch) the bus to Cairo every morning.

3 Complete the sentences with (must) or (mustn't):

- 1 I do my English homework. ✓
- 2 You walk on the grass. X
- 3 You look after the environment. ✓
- 4 Nadim tidy up the kitchen. ✓
- 5 Nahla wake her sick brother up. X
- 6 You forget to take a hat today. X



Listening



6

1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Ecosystems can be small, like a/an (للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- a) desert b) forest c) rockpool d) island
- Ecosystems can be, like the Amazon rainforest.
- a) small b) short c) big d) high
- The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and
- a) water b) seaweed c) ships d) rocks
- Animals and plants need food, water, and shelter to
- a) travel b) survive c) swim d) fly



Reading

4

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- are good at making things by their hands. (الشرقية - إدارة لقومس 2024)
- a) Scribes b) Farmers c) Craftsmen d) Fruit
- A is a person who could read and write. (الجيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024)
- a) scribe b) carpenter c) fisherman d) farmer
- A in Ancient Egypt bought and sold things like gold. (الشرقية - إدارة ماب لقمع 2024)
- a) trader b) scribe c) vet d) fisherman
- Fish and are living things. (الشرقية - إدارة متيا القمع 2024)
- a) crabs b) rocks c) sunlight d) sand

4

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

aim – teammates – team – science – maths

I'm Mahmoud. I work in a team in(1)....., when we're doing an experiment. When you work in a(2)....., you work with other people to do something together. For example, the(3)..... of a football team is to win. You work with your(4)..... to do this. You can't win a football match by yourself!

6

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

Hello, I'm Ahmed. When I was young, I knew I didn't want to work with animals. They scare me! I'm not keen on being outside, so I wanted an office job. When I was

young, I loved playing computer games. I also enjoy solving problems. So, in my job, I do both! I also enjoy working with other people. There are 16 people in my team. We don't always agree, but we work out the best solutions.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1 Ahmed didn't want to work with
a) computers b) science c) animals d) balls
- 2 Ahmed loved playing games when he was young.
a) football b) basketball c) computer d) handball

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why didn't Ahmed want to work with animals?
- 4 How many people are there in Ahmed's team?



Writing

5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 like – pots – making – We – clay – from.

بورسعيد 2024

- 2 eat – You – in – mustn't – the – classroom.

الشرقية – إدارة ههيا 2024

6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- 1 Walid must (cleans) the hippos' teeth.
- 2 She (wash) the dishes every day.

الشرقية – إدارة فاقوس 2024

7 Punctuate the following:

1

what's the color of your karate suit

8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

Jobs in Ancient Egypt
worked hard – most people worked as

مجالس
صفحة
309



Assess our progress
★★★★★

< 50%

Study again

50-64%

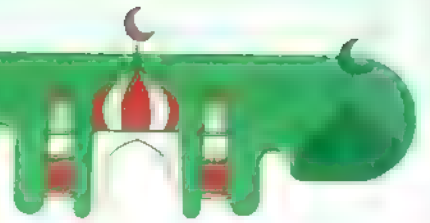
Practice more

65-84%

Self-reflection

85-100%

Well done!



تحتوي هذه الصفحة على أسئلة خاصة بمواصفات الأزهر.

1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Ancient Egyptian (traders – doctors – craftsmen) were very good.
- 2 They made beautiful (silver – gold – wood) jewelry and sculptures.
- 3 They used to (weave – buy – sell) beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots.

2 Choose the correct answer:

- 1 (Traders – Scribes – Fishermen) in Ancient Egypt knew how to read and write well.
- 2 Sunlight and rocks are (living – non-living – plant) things.
- 3 (Ecosystem – Sunlight – Rockpool) means all the animals, plants, rocks, etc., in a place.
- 4 My sister (study – studies – studying) at Mansoura University.
- 5 You (must – mustn't – does) take your umbrella. It is raining.

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

- 1 many – Scribes – hieroglyphics – learning – years – spent.

- 2 the – Everything – connected – world – in – natural – is.

- 3 food, – Animals – and – water, – shelter – need.

- 4 the – Wana – looks – hippos – after.

- 5 to – important – It's – work – hard – very.

Unit

6

What's the weather like?

ما هي حالة الطقس؟



- By the end of this unit, the student will be able to:
- listen, read, research, and write about the weather.
 - read and listen to a short story about a heat wave.
 - use adverbs of frequency with the present simple.
 - understand a dialog about water pollution.
 - learn to distinguish the /p/ and /b/ sounds and silent letters in words.
 - write an account of extreme weather.
 - research and make a leaflet about what to do in extreme weather.

Did you know?

The hottest day ever in Egypt was 51.1°C, in Aswan.

Find out!

Heavy rain, strong winds, and ~~extreme weather~~ happened in Egypt in March 2020. Airports and ~~highways~~ were closed. Schools and some government offices were closed, too.

عواصف رعدية | * highways

الطرق السريعة



1 Listen, point, and say.

الطقس

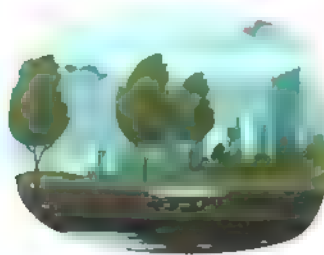


Main vocabulary



cloud

سحابة



rain

مطر



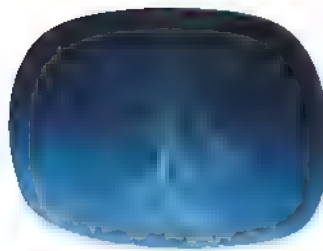
snow

جليد



rainbow

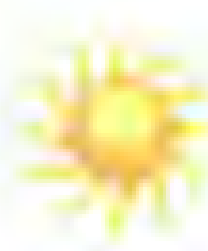
قوس قزح



storm



wind



sun



ice



windy

عاصف



rainy

ممطر



cloudy

غائم



sunny

شمس

Extra vocabulary

weather	طقس	weatherwoman	مذيعة النشرة الحوية	news	أخبار
normal (adj.)	طبيعي	finally	أخيراً	variety	تنوع
although	بالرغم من	dry (adj.)	جاف	summers	فصول الصيف
temperature	درجة الحرارة	degrees	درجات	winters	فصول الشتاء
cooler (adj.)	أكثر برودة	special (adj.)	خاص / مميز	climate	مناخ
warm (adj.)	دافئ	little (adj.)	قليل	south	الجنوب

Conjugation of verbs تصريف الأفعال

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
rain تمطر	rained	believe يصدق	believed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
bring يحضر	brought	mean يعني	meant

Expressions and Phrases

It's going to be ...	من المتوقع أن ...	What about?	ماذا عن؟
Stay at home!	ابق في المنزل!	goes to	تصل إلى
goes down to	تنخفض إلى	keep cool/warm	يبقى باردًا / دافئًا
in the day	في فترة النهار	at night	في فترة الليل
per year	سنويًا	by the sea	بجانب البحر
eight times more	أكثر بثماني مرات	that's why	ولذلك

Take care!

- تتكون بعض الصفات بإضافة حرف ال (v) للأسماء.

e.g. rain مطر → rainy ممطر cloud سحابة → cloudy غائم

- الطقس (weather) حدث محدد - مثل عاصفة أو يوم حار - يحدث خلال فترة زمنية قصيرة.

- المناخ (climate) هو متوسط الأحوال الجوية في مكان على مدى ٣٠ عامًا أو أكثر.

Important sentences جمل هامة

- * We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. لدينا تنوع جميل في الطقس في مصر.
- * We have very hot summers and cooler winters. لدينا فصول صيف حارة جدًا وفصول شتاء أكثر برودة.
- * In the desert, people try to keep cool in the day and warm at night. في الصحراء، يحاول الناس الحفاظ على البرودة في النهار والدفء في الليل.
- * It doesn't often rain in Cairo. لا تمطر كثيرًا في القاهرة.
- * The Nile is so important for Egypt because it brings the water from the south. نهر النيل مهم جدًا لمصر لأنه يجلب الماء من الجنوب.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 When the air is strong, it's always (rainy - windy - sunny - cloudy).
- 2 It's (snowy - cloudy - hot - sunny) today. Let's go out and enjoy the sun.
- 3 The (rainbow - ice - storm - wind) has seven colors.
- 4 We didn't see the sun because it was so (hot - cold - sunny - shiny).
- 5 It's (cold - windy - icy - sunny) in Cairo today. It's 10 °C.
- 6 Take your umbrella; it is (cloudy - windy - rainy - cold) outside.

Listen, read, and role-play:

استمع، اقرأ، وانضم إلى التمثيل.

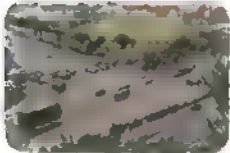


Weatherwoman



Good morning, everyone! I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today. It's going to be rainy in Cairo.

صباح الخير جميعاً! أحسن لكم خبر بطقس في مصر اليوم. ستكون رحو مقطراً في القاهرة.



Rainy in Cairo? How often does it rain in Cairo? It's always sunny there!

مستمر في القاهرة؟ كم مرّة مطر في القاهرة؟ الحو دائماً مشمس هناك!

Presenter



I know, but today it's rainy.

أنا أعرف، لكن اليوم رحو مقطراً.

What about Sharm El-Sheikh?

Presenter



Weatherwoman



It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice.

حو ليس بارداً أبداً في شرم الشيخ، ولكن لدينا اليوم بعض الجليد.



I don't believe it! What about Alexandria?

Presenter



لا أصدق ذلك! ماذا عن الإسكندرية؟

Weatherwoman



It's going to be windy. That's normal – it is sometimes windy in Alexandria.

سكون عاصف هذا طبيعي. أحياناً يكون رحو عاصف في الإسكندرية.



Well, thank you. And, finally, what about Luxor?

Presenter



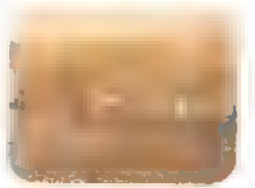
جسناً، شكراً لك. وأخيراً ماذا عن الأقصر؟

Weatherwoman



Oh, this is very important: Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!

أوه، هذا مهم جداً! الأقصر سواجه عاصفه، لذا ابق في المنزل!



The weather in Egypt الطقس في مصر

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt, although it is usually very dry. We have very hot summers and the temperature sometimes goes to 50 °C in some places! Our winters are cooler, and the temperatures can go down to around 12 °C.

The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights. The temperature can go to 0 °C. This means that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.

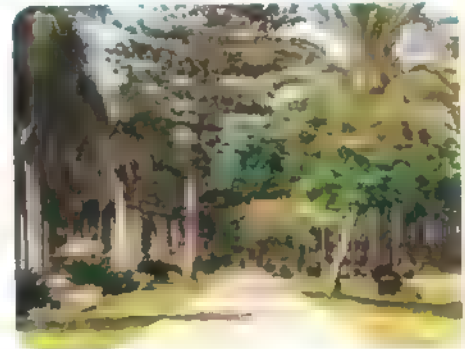


يحاول سكان الصحراء في مصر البقاء باردين في النهار وباردين في الليل.

It doesn't often rain in Cairo – there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London:

London has about 600 mm per year. Now you can see why the Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt. It brings the water from the south.

By the sea, it rains a lot more – Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!



القاهرة لا تصطر كثيرًا، يوجد حوالي 25 ملم فقط من المطر كل عام. هذا قليل جدًا عندما ننظر إلى لندن. لندن تحصل على 600 ملم من المطر كل عام. الآن يمكننا أن نرى لماذا النيل مهم جدًا للجميع في مصر. إنه يجلب المياه من الجنوب. بجانب البحر، تصطر كثيرًا أكثر من القاهرة. هذا هو السبب في أنها خضراء جدًا.

Did you know?

°C is short for "degrees Celsius".

°C هي اختصار لـ "درجة مئوية".

Check

Choose the correct answer:

- In the desert, people try to keep (cool – warm – cold – hot) at night.
- (London – Cairo – Alexandria – Assuan) has 25 mm of rain per year.
- Alexandria has around (eight – six – ten – three) times more rain than Cairo.

Practice



Lesson 1

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating



1. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



- 1 Amira's is a weatherman.
a) brother b) father c) uncle d) son
- 2 It is going to rain in today.
a) Alexandria b) Luxor c) Cairo d) Aswan
- 3 It is going to be very in Alexandria today.
a) windy b) cloudy c) snowy d) rainy
- 4 In Luxor, they are going to have a
a) rainbow b) storm c) rain d) wind

2. Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- 1 I think it's going to rain. It's very
a) sunny b) warm c) hot d) cloudy
- 2 What about the in Alexandria? B It's very cold today.
a) food b) weather c) sports d) traffic
- 3 The are cooler in Egypt.
a) winters b) springs c) summers d) falls
- 4 It's hot in Luxor. It's always in Luxor.
a) cloudy b) rainy c) sunny d) windy
- After it rains, we can see the in the sky.
a) fire b) rainbow c) ring d) sand

للمصوفة - ادارة سروس الفيديو 2024

3. Listen and complete the text with the words in the box.

night – like – cooler – summers – climate

There is a very nice variety of weather in Egypt. We have very hot(1).....

The temperature can sometimes go up to 50 °C. Winters are(2)..... in

Egypt. The temperature can go down to around 12 °C. The desert has a very special

.....(3)..... The temperature can go to 0 °C at(4).....

Read the text and answer the questions:

We have a nice variety of weather in Egypt. In Cairo, it doesn't often rain; there's only about 25 mm of rain every year. It's very little when you look at London: London has about 600 mm per year. Now, you can see why the Nile is so important for everyone in Egypt. It brings the water from the south. By the sea, it rains a lot more – Alexandria has around eight times more rain than Cairo. That's why it's very green!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about the
a) foods b) clothes c) weather d) people
- 2 The underlined word "Nile" is a
a) lake b) river c) sea d) pond

Answer the following questions:

- 3 How much does it rain in London per year?

- 4 Why is the Nile important for Egypt?

Put the word in the correct order to make a sentence:

- 1 does – in – How – Cairo – it – often – rain?

- 2 to – °C – The temperature – goes – 50 – sometimes – up.

- 3 brings – the – The Nile – the south – from – water.

- 4 in – hot – It's – the – very – summer.

القاهرة – إدارة حلوان 2024

Punctuate the following:

london has about 600 mm per year

- 2 What about luxor



My heat wave story قصتي للموجة الحارة



1. Listen, point, and say

استمع! ثم اقول

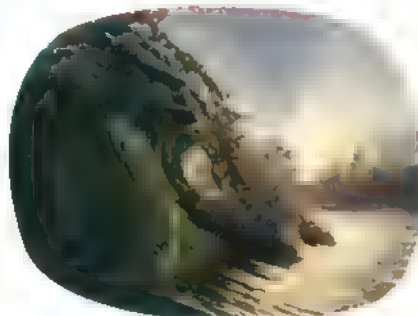


Main vocabulary



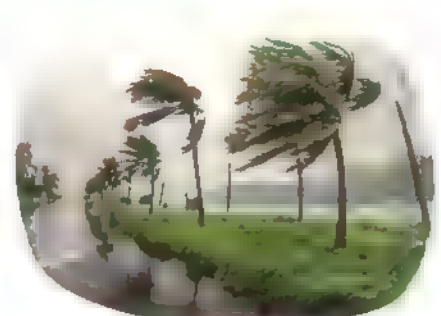
tornado

إعصار



tidal wave

موجة عارمة



strong winds / storm

رياح شديدة / عاصفة



sandstorm

عاصفه رملية



flood

فيضان



heat wave

موجة حارة

Extra vocabulary

season	فصل من فصول السنة	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	shade	ظل
store	متجر	watermelon	بطيخة	grapes	عنب
lemon	ليمون	lemonade	عصير الليمون	suddenly	فجأة
kind (adj.)	طيب / عطوف	lady	سيدة	son	ابن
worried (adj.)	قلقان	reply	رد	quiet (ad)	هادئ
voice	صوت (إنسان)	floor	أرضية	nearby	بالقرب من

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
happen يحدث	happened	stay يبقى	stayed
pass يمر بـ	passed	knock يطرق / يخبط	knocked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
become يصبح / يتحول	became	hear يسمع	heard
fall يسقط	fell	lie يمدد	lay

Expressions and Phrases

goes very high	ترتفع جدًا	to cool us down	لتبريدنا
come back	يعود	on the shady side	على الجانب المظلل
past all our friends' houses	مرويًا بمنازل كل أصدقائنا	hear a cry	يسمع صرخة
in her 70s	في السبعينيات من عمرها	in the day	في النهار
a bit open	مفتوح قليلًا	at first	في البداية
what to do	ما الذي يجب أن نفعله؟	come running	يأتي مسرعًا
get ... onto a chair	يضع ... على كرسي	feel ill	يشعر بالتعب
fell down	تسقط أرضًا	lying on the floor	ملقاة على الأرضية



Find out!

Egypt had the coldest weather in the last ten years in January 2022. It was very cold during the daytime and frost at night for up to a month.

شهدت مصر أبرد طقس منذ عشر سنوات في يناير ٢٠٢٢. كان الطقس شديد البرودة في النهار وصيفًا في الليل لمدة تصل إلى شهر.



عند إصافة -ing، بالفعل (lie)، فيه نحول إلى lying.

Choose the correct answer:

When there's lots of water in the streets, it's a (tornado - heat wave - flood - sandstorm).

There are four (seasons - months - weeks - winters) in a year.

I can't see anything in the (fog - rain - sandstorm - wind - flood). The dust is in my eyes.

We can drink (potato - lemonade - coffee - tea) when it's so hot.



2. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:

The beginning

The very hot summer became a heat wave. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees celcius, and no one can do anything. We stayed in the shade and tried to drink lots of water. Mom asked me and my friend Lamia to go to the store to buy watermelon, grapes, and lemons to make lemonade to cool us down. We went to the store. We came back on the shady side of the street, and past all our friends' houses.



١٥٠ لا نستطيع حركتنا

١٥٠. نعيش في ظل وجانب مغرب لشمس من أشعة. ظلمت هي من ومن صديقنا نساء. لذهب إلى البحر يسراء المطبخ وأصبحوا نسوة

The middle

Suddenly, as we were passing Mrs Sohair's house, we heard a cry. Mrs Sohair is a very kind lady in her 70s and lives with her son, but he goes to work in the day. Lamia and I were worried and Mrs Sohair's door was a bit open, so we knocked and called 'Mrs Sohair!' At first there was no reply, then we heard a quiet voice, 'I'm here!' We went into the kitchen and she was on the floor! 'Help me!' she said. At first, we didn't know what to do, but then I ran outside and saw Mr Monib, who works nearby. 'Mr Monib, please help Mrs Sohair!' I called. Mr Monib came running. We all helped get Mrs Sohair onto a chair, then we gave her lots of water and some of our fruit.

١٥٠. ونحن نمر على منزل السيدة سحر صرخة. السيدة سحر طلبة بكثرة في استحيات من عمرها ونعيش مع ابنتها نساء نذهب

١٥٠. أنا ونساء بالقلوب وكان ذات السيدة سحر مشغول بعض النساء. لذلك طرقتا ونساء السيدة سحر. في البداية لم

١٥٠. ب هذا ذهب من المطبخ وكانت على الأرض قالت: سأكون في البيت. لم يكن يعرف ما نري نحن

١٥٠. ب السيدة سحر نداء يصرخ في الخارج. قالت: سأكون في البيت. لم يكن يعرف ما نري نحن

١٥٠. سيد صبح. إكتب. سأكون جميع في حبل السيدة سحر على كرسي. لم أعتقد لكثير من النساء ونحن نأكله

The end

She said she went to the kitchen to get some water, but she felt ill and fell down because it was so hot. She couldn't get up. She was very happy we heard her, and we were happy we could help her!

١٥٠. قالت: بيا كانت ذهبة إلى المطبخ للحصول على بعض الماء. لكنها شعرت بالسوء وسقطت على الأرض. لأن الجو كان شديد الحرارة. لم نستطع نهوض

١٥٠. كانت سعيدة للغاية: بيا كنت سعيدة. كنت أستطيع مساعدتها



1 What did mom ask them to buy? Why?

2 Why do you think Mrs Sohair fell down in her kitchen?

SB



Language Focus

Adverbs of frequency ظروف التكرار

We use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often we do things.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع البسيط مع الأشياء التي نقوم بها كل يوم.



Subject
(فاعل)

adverbs of frequency
(ظروف التكرار)

main verb
(الفعل الأساسي)

e.g. I **always** go to the club on sunny Saturdays.

Ahmed **usually** plays football.

We **never** go to school on Friday.

لاحظ أن (verb to be) يسبق ظروف التكرار:

Subject
(فاعل)

verb to be (am / is / are)

adverbs of frequency
ظروف التكرار

e.g. I'm **always** in bed at 11 pm.

The Present Simple

- I / We / They / You { (inf.) (يفعل في المصدر) ...
don't + (inf.) (يفعل في المصدر) ...
- He / She / It { (inf.) + (s, es, ies) ...
doesn't + (inf.) (يفعل في المصدر) ...

Wh-questions with "How often ...?" in the present simple tense:

Question

How often

do + (I/we/they/you)
does + (he/she/it)

(inf.) (يفعل في المصدر) ...?

OR

Subject + (a ways / usually / often / sometimes / never) + main verb ...

Subject + (am / is / are) + (a ways / usually / often / sometimes / never) ...

e.g.

A How often do you play tennis?

B I never play tennis. I can't play!

Choose the correct answer:

- I (never / a ways / often / usually) watch TV. I watch it every day.
- She (often / always / never / sometimes) drinks milk. She doesn't like it.
- I usually (visit / visits / visiting / to visit) my grandma on Fridays.
- She usually (watch / watches / watching / to watch) cartoon movies.
- She (doesn't / don't / isn't / aren't) speak English.
- I (doesn't / don't / isn't / aren't) go to the park on Sundays.
- A How (tall / often / many / much) do you go swimming? B Sometimes.
- I get up at five o'clock seven days a week. I (never / usually / always / sometimes) get up early.
- How often does he (plays / play / playing / played) video games?
- It's always hot and sunny. That's why I (a ways / usually / never / often) see snow.



Pronunciation



3 Listen, point, and say

استمع، اشر، وقول



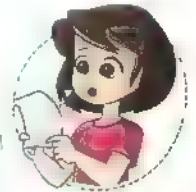
We make the sounds **p/** and **b/** at the front of our mouths, by pressing our lips together. But they are very different.

نصنع الاصوات **p/** و **b/** في مقدمة فوهنا، نضغط على شفاهنا معاً. لكنهم مختلفان جداً.

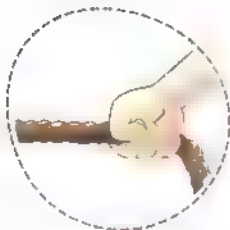
Pp
/p/

The **/p/** sound is **unvoiced**. This means air comes out of our mouth when we say it. When you say **/p/**, the paper moves.

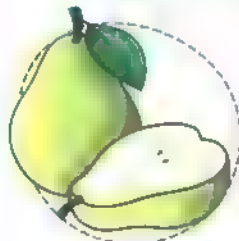
الصوت **/p/** غير مسموع. هذا يعني أن الهواء يخرج من أفواهنا عندما نقول ذلك. عندما نقول **/p/**، تحرك الورقة.



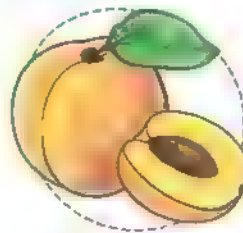
Pp **/p/**



pull



pear



peach



pea

Bb
/b/

The **/b/** sound is **voiced**. This means the paper doesn't move when you say it.

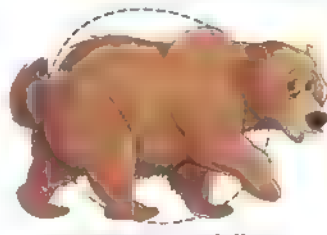
الصوت **/b/** مسموع. هذا يعني أن الورقة لا تحرك عندما نقول ذلك.



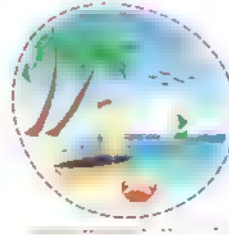
Bb **/b/**



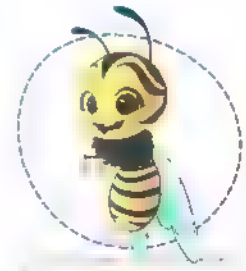
bull



bear



beach



bee

Silent letters الحروف الصامتة



4 Listen point and say

استمع للنقطة وقم



In English, there are some words with **silent letters** – letters we don't pronounce.

في اللغة الإنجليزية، يوجد بعض الكلمات ذات الحروف الصامتة. الحروف التي لا نطقها.



climb



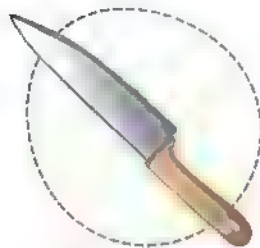
two



hour



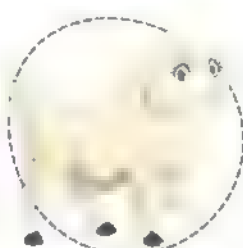
island



knife



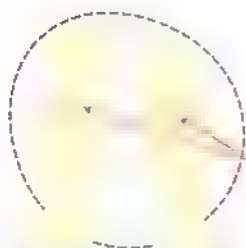
write



lamb



wrist



knee



answer



castle



sign

He was climbing on an island with his two cats. He fell onto a beach and hurt his wrist. But he was very lucky – he had a knife so he could make a bandage and write a message in the sand. Two hours later, people came to save him!

كان ينسلق جزيرة مع قطتيه. سقط على الشاطئ وأصاب معصمه. لكنه كان محظوظاً جداً. كان لديه



Practice



Lessons 2 & 3

Remembering • Understanding • Applying • Analyzing • Evaluating • Creating



(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Salma always wakes up at am every morning.
a) 6 b) 7 c) 8 d) 9
- 2 Salma usually has at 8 am.
a) breakfast b) lunch c) dinner d) snack
- 3 Salma drives her car to work.
a) always b) often c) sometimes d) never
- 4 Salma sleeps late.
a) always b) often c) sometimes d) never

- 1 When it is hot, we stay in the
a) shade b) sun c) desert d) hot
- 2 A is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 degrees.
a) storm b) heat wave c) flood d) sandstorm
- 3 The books were dirty from the sand that came from the
a) tidal wave b) sandstorm c) flood d) tornado
- 4 I can't this heavy box alone.
a) bull b) pull c) answer d) write
- 5 A is a strong animal that looks like a cow.
a) pea b) pull c) lamb d) bull
- 6 My favorite fruit is They're usually green.
a) peas b) bees c) bears d) pears
- 7 There was a "No Parking" on the road.
a) island b) sign c) hour d) castle
- 8 The king and the queen live in a
a) house b) castle c) club d) school

الشرقية - إدارة الماشر من رمضان 2024

الإسكندرية - إدارة المتزه 2024

Read the text and choose the correct word from the box.

lemonade – temperature – watermelons – shade – tea

There was a heat wave yesterday in Cairo. The(1)..... was above 45 degrees. People stayed at home or in the(2)..... when they were outside. They couldn't do anything. They drank lots of water and (3)..... to stay cool. They also ate cold(4)..... and grapes.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 do – How – they – tennis – often – play?

2 do – I – always – homework – my.

الإسكندرية - إدارة وسط 2024

in – We – summers – hot – Egypt – have.

الحيرة - إدارة جنوب الحيرة 2024

tired – O a – work – is – after – never.

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1 I (usually) play tennis. I can't play it.

2 My sister never eats sweets. She (never) eats healthy foods.

3 Rabbits (always) eat meat. They eat carrots.

4 Maged (never s) late for school.

كفر الشيخ - إدارة سوق التعليمية 2024

5 We (plays) computer games at the weekend.

القليوبية - إدارة شمر الحيمة 2024

6 I sometimes (has) a sandwich for lunch.

7 They (do usually) homework in the evening.

8 (He) sometimes help mom in the kitchen.

9 (Who) often do they study English?

10 A: How (long) do you watch TV? B: Always.

11 How often (do) Waleed play tennis?

12 A: How (many) do you play tennis? B: I never play tennis.

القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

"My daily routine"

get up – brush my teeth – never play video games

محتاجه
أجر الكتاب
صفحة
370



1. Listen and say:

1. Listen and say:



Main vocabulary

classmates	زملاء الفصل	tornado	إعصار	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
air conditioning	مكيف الهواء	flood	فيضان	extreme heat	حرارة شديدة
lightning	البرق	electric wires	أسلاك كهربائية	power cut	انقطاع التيار (الكهرباء)
torches	كشافات	unsafe	غير آمن	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية

Extra vocabulary

extreme	شديد	weather event	حدث الطقس	frightening	مخيف
wide	واسع	closer	أقرب	buildings	مبانٍ
sand	رمال	road	طريق	scared	خائف
suddenly	فجأة	tips	نصائح	thirsty	عطشان
scarf	وشاح (كوفية)	clothing	ملابس	leaflet	منشور / كتيب
heavy rain	أمطار غزيرة	candles	شموع	afraid	حائف

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
describe	described	twist	twisted
move	moved	destroy	destroyed
contact	contacted	check	checked

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past
hurt	hurt	hit	hit
wear	wore	shut	shut
fall	fell	strike	struck

Expressions and Phrases

get dark	يُظلم	getting bigger	تزداد في الحجم
bits of houses	أجزاء من المنازل	look like	يبدو مثل
drive through the desert	يقود السيارة عبر الصحراء	look out of	ينظر للخارج من
move the car off the road	يُبعد السيارة عن الطريق	move away	يتحرك بعيداً
keep safe	يبقى آمناً	even if	حتى لو
light meals	وجبات خفيفة	get to the side of the road	يتحرك إلى جانب الطريق
make sure	يتأكد	as much as possible	بقدر المستطاع
turn off	نطفئ	in case	في حالة



Writing

An account of extreme weather event تقرير عن حدث طقس قاسٍ



2 Look and read.

10-9-10

An account of a tornado تقرير عن إعصار

I was at school with my classmates. Then it started to get dark. We went outside. Then I saw the tornado and it was very frightening. It was a very big, wide, black cloud. As it came near us, it was getting bigger and it was twisting around. We could see things in it, like doors and bits of houses! When it was closer, it got even wider and darker. The next day, we found out that the tornado hurt a lot of people, and destroyed many homes and other buildings.



لُبت في مدرسته مع زملائي في الفصل. ثم بدأت السماء تظلم. ذهبنا للخارج. ثم رأيت الإعصار وكان محف حذاء. كان سحابة سوداء كبيرة وعريضة. عندما ضرب منا، كان كبير وكان يلتف حولنا. يمكننا أن نرى أشياء فيه، مثل الأبواب وقطع من المنازل! عندما كان قريب، أصبح أكثر اتساعاً وأكثر ظلمة. في اليوم التالي، اكتشفنا أن الإعصار أصاب الكثير من الناس ودمر العديد من المنازل.

خاصة الأخرى.

An account of a sandstorm تقرير عن العاصفة الرملية

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. Soon, there was a lot of sand in the air outside the car and it was very difficult to see. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. There were other cars on the road. Were they going to hit us? I was really scared. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert!

سارت في الصحراء لزيارة أبناء عمومي. بعد عشرين دقيقة، نظرت من نافذة وزيت عاصفه معه. سارتان هنا كان هناك الكثير من الرمال في الهواء خارج السيارة وكان من الصعب للعبه ان يرى. أغلقنا جميع النوافذ، لكن الان سمع انجو مظلمة للعابه. كانت هناك سيارات أخرى على الطريق. هل سربطون منا؟ كنت حائفة حقاً. انعد والدي السيارة عن الطريق ووقفنا. لم ير المزيد من السيارات على الطريق، لكن العاصفه الرملية تحركت ببطء شديد. ثم فجاء، تحركت بعيدا. لقد

بنا سبب منة حرق واشتعلت في الصحراء

Tips for keeping safe in extreme weather

نصائح للحفاظ على سلامتك في الطقس القاسي

Keeping safe in extreme heat

البقاء في أماكن في الحارة شديدة

Drink lots of water, even if you don't feel thirsty.

اشرب الكثير من الماء حتى لو لم تشعر بالعطش

Try to spend time in cool buildings with air conditioning.

حاول قضاء الوقت في المباني الباردة التي بها مكيف هواء

Open the windows when there's a cool wind.

Don't go outside. If you must go outside, stay in the shade.

Eat small, light meals.

أكل وجبات صغيرة وخفيفة

Wear light, cool clothing.

ارتد ملابس خفيفة وباردة

Keeping safe in a sandstorm

البقاء في أماكن في العاصفة الرملية

Wear a scarf to protect your face.

ارتدوشال كوقاية لوجهك وحيد

Stay inside, so the sand can't get in your mouth.

بق داخل حتى لا يدخل الرمل في فمك

If you're driving, try to get to the side of the road, so you can stop your car.

إذا كنت تقود سيارة، فحاول التوجه إلى جانب الطريق حتى

يمكنك من إيقاف السيارة

If you're at home, make sure your windows are shut so no sand can get in.

اكد ان ابواب و نوافذ منزلك مغلقة حتى لا يدخل

Cover your head and face as much as possible.

Turn off air conditioning to stop the sand coming in.



3. Look and read:

انظر واقرأ:



Project

A leaflet about keeping safe in a storm

نشرة حول البقاء بأمان في العاصفة

What might happen in a storm?

ما الذي يمكن أن يحدث في العاصفة؟



- There might be very strong winds.

من الممكن أن تكون هناك رياح قوية

- There might be heavy rain and lightning.

من الممكن أن تحدث امطار غزيرة وبرق

- It might not be safe to go outside – electric wires could fall.

- There might be a power cut.

قد تكون هناك انقطاع في التيار الكهربائي

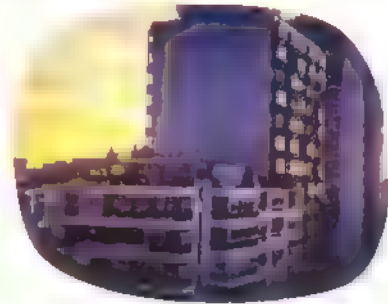
- People on the street, in houses, or in cars might need your help.

قد يكون الناس في الشارع أو في المنازل أو في السيارات في

حاجة إلى مساعدتك

How can you protect yourself?

كيف تستطيع حماية نفسك؟



- Stay inside and keep dry.

بقي في الداخل وحافظ على جفافك

- Make sure you have candles and torches – there might be a power cut.

أكد من وجود الشموع والمصابيح قد يكون هناك انقطاع في

إسلاك الكهرباء

- Contact your friends and family to check they are safe.

اتصل بأصدقائك وعائلتك للتحقق من أنهم بأمان.

- Don't go anywhere by train – this could be unsafe.

لا تذهب إلى أي مكان بالقطار - فقد تكون هذا غير آمن

- Help anyone who is afraid.

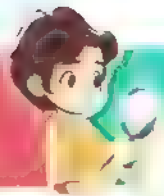
ساعد أي شخص خائف.

- Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes.

لا تقف تحت الأشجار في حالة حدوث صواعق

- Don't stand near wires – they could fall and give you an electric shock.

لا تقف بالقرب من الأسلاك - فقد تسقط وتسبب لك صدمة كهربائية



1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Make sure you have There might be a power cut.
a) candles b) pens c) books d) chairs
- 2 Don't stand under trees in case strikes.
a) rain b) wind c) lightning d) cloud
- 3 Don't stand near They could fall and give you an electric shock.
a) trees b) cars c) wires d) houses
- 4 In extreme heat, spend time in cool buildings with
a) air conditioning b) sofas
c) desks d) chairs
- 5 In extreme heat, open the windows when there's a wind.
a) hot b) burning c) warm d) cool
- 6 In a sandstorm, wear a to protect your face.
a) scarf b) galabeya c) jacket d) boot
- 7 It started to get dark outside. There was a/an
a) flood b) tornado c) extreme heat d) volcano
- 8 The tornado was around.
a) twisting b) running c) playing d) jumping

2 Read the text and complete the text with the words in the box:

torches – electric – strikes – afraid – safe

In a storm, stay inside and keep dry. Make sure you have candles and (1) because there might be a power cut. Contact your friends and family to check they are (2) Don't go anywhere by train. This could be unsafe. Don't stand under trees in case lightning (3) Don't stand near wires. They could fall and give you an (4) shock.

3 Read the text and answer the questions

القاهرة إدارة الشروق 2024

One day, my family and I were driving through the desert to visit my cousins. After twenty minutes, I looked out of the window and saw a sandstorm. We closed all the windows, but it was now very dark. My father moved the car off the road and we stopped. We didn't see any more cars on the road, but the sandstorm moved very slowly. Then, suddenly, it moved away. We saw the sun again and drove on through the desert.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 They were going in a/an
a) train b) car c) ferry d) underground
- 2 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the
a) sandstorm b) desert c) window d) road

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What did they do to keep safe in the extreme weather condition?

- 4 Summarize the passage in two sentences.

Put the words in the correct order to make a sentence.

- 1 a scarf – Wear – protect – face – your – to.
- 2 your – Make – are – shut – windows – sure.
- 3 be – winds – There – strong – might – very.
- 4 anyone – nap – is – afraid – who.

Punctuate the following.

- 1 It s windy in alexandria.
- 2 were they going to hit us

القاهرة – إدارة المساتين 2024

Write a text of about 100 words using the following words.

"An extreme weather condition"

What is it? – What happens? – What should people do to keep safe?





يهدف هذا الجزء إلى تمكين الطالب من مراجعة أهم الأجزاء التي وردت بالوحدة

Lesson (1)

cloud	سحابة	rain	مطر
snow	جليد	rainbow	قوس قزح
storm	عاصفة	wind	رياح
sun	شمس	ice	ثلج
windy	عاصف	rainy	ممطر
cloudy	غائم	sunny	مشمس
weather	طقس	news	أخبار
variety	تنوع	temperature	درجة الحرارة
degrees	درجات	climate	مناخ

Lessons (2 & 3)

tornado	إعصار	tidal wave	موجة عارمة
strong winds/ storm	رياح شديدة / عاصفة	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية
flood	فيضان	heat wave	موجة حارة
season	فصل من فصول السنة	shade	ظل
store	متجر	worried	قلقان
pull	يسحب	pear	كمثرى
peach	خوخ	pea	حبة بازلاء
bull	ثور	bear	دب
beach	شاطئ	bee	حشرة

Lessons (4 & 5)

classmates	زملاء الفصل	air conditioning	مكيف الهواء	extreme heat	حرارة شديدة
lightning	البرق	electric wires	أسلاك كهربائية	power cut	انقطاع التيار (الكهرباء)
torches	كشافات	unsafe	غير آمن	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية
weather event	حدث الطقس	frightening	مخيف	wide	واسع
buildings	مباني	road	طريق	scared	خائف
suddenly	فجأة	tips	نصائح	thirsty	عطشان
scarf	وشاح (كوفية)	clothing	ملابس	leaflet	منشور / كتيب
heavy rain	أمطار غزيرة	candles	شموع	afraid	خائف

Language Focus

Adverbs of frequency

always 100% never 0%

Subject + adverbs of frequency + main verb

I always go to the club on sunny Saturdays.

Subject + verb to be (am / is / are) + adverbs of frequency

I'm always in bed at 11 pm.

Wh-questions with "How often ...?"

How often → do + (I/we/they/you) / does + (he/she/it) (inf.) (...) ... ?

Subject + (...) + main verb ...

OR

Subject + (am / is / are)

+ (always / usually / often / sometimes / never)

A How often do you play tennis?

B I never play tennis. I can't play!

Unit 6

CHECK YOUR VOCABULARY



تأكد من حفظك لكلمات الدروس قبل البدء في إجابة اختبار الوحدة.

Lesson 1

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

عاصفة
رياح
قوس قزح
عاصف
ممطر
جليد
طقس
تنوع

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

سحابة
شمس
ثلج
مطر
غائم
شمس
درجات الحرارة
أخبار

Lessons 2 & 3

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

إعصار
عاصفة رملية
فيضان
ثور
دب
يسحب
شاطئ
صوت (إنسان)
جريدة
يكتب
وسع
إجابة
علامة/لافتة
ظل

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

موجة عارمة
عصير ليمون
موجة حارة
خوخ
حبة بازلاء
كمثرى
متجر
يتسلق
ساعة
سكية
خروف صغير
ركبة
قلعة
فصل من فصول السنة

Lessons 4 & 5

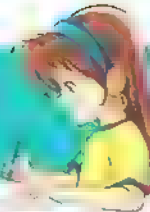
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

كشافات
غير آمن
صدمة كهربائية
مخيف
مبانى
خائف

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

رملاء الفصل
مكيف الهواء
حرارة شديدة
الرق
أسلاك كهربائية
انقطاع التيار (الكهرباء)

WRITING TIME



تجميعه لاهم
موضوعات
الوحدة

لكني تتمكن من كتابة الموضوعات بشكل مميز، اتبع هذه الخطوات.

How to present weather conditions:

I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today.

- 1 It's going to be (حالة الطقس) in (اسم محافظة).
- 2 It's never very (حالة الطقس نادرة الحدوث) in (اسم محافظة), but today (حالة الطقس).
- 3 It's going to be (حالة الطقس) in (اسم محافظة).
- 4 (اسم محافظة) is going to have a (ظاهرة جوية قاسية), so stay at home!

"The weather today"

I'm bringing you the news of the weather in Egypt today. It's going to be rainy in Cairo. It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice. It's going to be windy in Alexandria. Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home!

How to write about your daily routine:

- 1 I always (أمر تقوم به دائمًا) ...
- 2 I often (أمر تقوم به عادة) ...
- 3 I usually (أمر تقوم به عادة) ...
- 4 I sometimes (أمر تقوم به أحياناً) ...
- 5 I never (أمر لا تقوم به أبداً) ...

"My daily routine"

I always get up early at 6.30 in the morning. I often take a short shower, then I read a book. I help my mom make breakfast at 8 am in the kitchen. I usually eat breakfast at 8.30. I sometimes visit my grandparents on Friday. I never play video games. I don't like them.

How to write about an extreme weather condition:

- 1 (تعريف حالة الطقس) is (حالة الطقس) ...
- 2 (سبب) is when (حالة الطقس) ...
- 3 To keep safe, (أمر) ...
- 4 Try to (احتياطات للأمان) ...
- 5 We must (أمر) ...

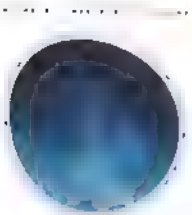
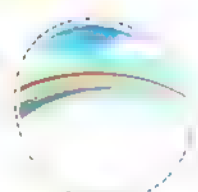
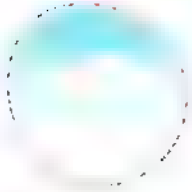
"A heat Wave"

A heat wave is the very hot summer. A heat wave is when the temperature goes very high, above 40 °C. To keep safe, stay in the shade. Try to drink lots of water. Open the windows when there's a cool wind. We must wear light, cool clothing, too.

يتضمن هذا الجزء أهم الأسئلة التي وردت بكتاب الوزارة

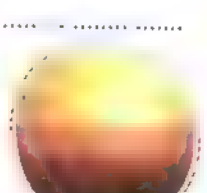
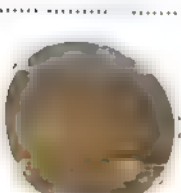
1 Look and write:

cloud – ice – rain – rainbow – snow – storm – sun – wind



2 Look and write:

flood – heat wave – sandstorm – strong winds / storm – tidal wave – tornado



3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1 speak English / I / always / English class / in my / .
- 2 meat / She / red / eats / never / .
- 3 football / plays / He / with his friends / sometimes / .
- 4 wake up / We / before 7 am / sometimes / .
- 5 have / I / usually / a sandwich for lunch / .
- 6 Ola / work / never / is / after / tired / .



Listening



1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 When there's a, stay inside and keep dry.
a) drought b) traffic c) storm d) heat
- 2 Make sure you have torches because there might be a cut.
a) knee b) power c) wire d) food
- 3 Don't go anywhere by
a) bus b) train c) taxi d) plane
- 4 Don't stand under in case lightning strikes.
a) trees b) buses c) houses d) umbrellas



Reading

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 When it's very hot and no one can do anything, it's called a
a) flood b) heat wave c) tidal wave d) tornado
- 2 I like They're my favorite fruit.
a) beaches b) peaches c) peas d) bees
- 3 The tornado could buildings.
a) help b) talk c) destroy d) build
- 4 Don't go if there's a sandstorm.
a) inside b) outside c) school d) home

القاهرة - إدارة حلوان 2024

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

hot – cool – air conditioning – shade – water

To keep yourself safe in extreme heat, you should drink lots of(1)....., even if you don't feel thirsty. Try to spend time in cool buildings with(2)..... . Open the windows when there's a(3)..... wind. Eat small, light meals. Wear light, cool clothing. If you must go outside, stay in the(4)..... .

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Noha is an active girl. She is in grade five. She always gets up early at 6.30 in the morning. She often takes a short shower, then reads a book. She helps her mom make breakfast at 8.00 am in the kitchen. They usually eat breakfast at 8.30. She helps her mom clean

the house. She goes to the park with her friends in the evening. She sometimes visits her grandparents on Friday. She never plays video games. She can't play them.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Noha is a/an girl.
a) lazy b) bad c) active d) naughty
- 2 Noha is in grade
a) 3 b) 4 c) 5 d) 6

Answer the following questions:

- 3 How often does Noha play video games?

When does Noha go to the park?



Writing

- 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

1 often – How – she – does – dinner – make?

There – a flood – was – Sudan – in.

القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

- 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

1 She always(drink) water.

الحيزة - إدارة الهرم 2024

How (n any) does it rain in the desert? B Never.

- 7 Punctuate the following:

1

what's the weather like, Mona

القليوبية - إدارة شبرا الخيمة 2024

- 8 Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"A heat wave"

A heat wave is – stay in the shade

مواظب على
صفحة
310



Assessment
progress
★★★★★

< 50%
Study again

50-64%
Practice more

65-84%
Well done!

85-100%
Well done!

235



1 Listen and choose the correct answer:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 It's going to be (windy – snowy – rainy) in Cairo.
- 2 It's going to be windy in (Cairo – Sharm El Sheikh – A'lexandria).
- 3 Luxor is going to have a (heat wave – storm – sandstorm), so stay at home.

2 Read the text and answer the questions:

When there's a sandstorm, wear a scarf to protect your face. If you're at home, make sure your windows are shut, so no sand can get in. Cover your head and face as much as possible. Stay inside, so the sand can't get in your mouth. If you're driving, try to get to the side of the road, so you can stop your car. Turn off air conditioning to stop the sand coming in.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

When there's a, wear a scarf to protect your face.

- a) tornado b) sandstorm c) flood d) heat wave

In a sandstorm, make sure your windows are shut, so no can get in.

- a) air b) water c) sand d) smoke

In a sandstorm, stay, so the sand can't get in your mouth.

- a) inside b) outside c) away d) close

Answer the following questions:

- 1 What should you do in a sandstorm if you're driving?
- 2 Why should you turn off air conditioning in a sandstorm?

3 Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

1 a – might – cut – **There** – be – power.


2 and – dry – **Stay** – keep – inside.

3 visit – grandparents – my – I – sometimes – on Friday.

4 Luxor – the – **What** – in – about – weather?

5 in – I – 11 – at – bed – always – pm.

Final Revision and Exams

- 
- Revision on Vocabulary
 - Revision on Grammar
 - Exercises on each 2 Units
 - 14 Final Exams
 - 3 Al-Azhar Exams
 - 3 امتحان دمج

Units 1 & 2



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 1

foods	أطعمة	chicken	دجاجة	price	سعر
grab	يسرع	drinks	مشروبات/يشرب	grow	يزرع
fridge	ثلاجة	ingredients	مكونات	lemons	ليمون
healthy	صحي	market	السوق	terrible	مرعب/فظيع
limes	ليمون حامض	unhealthy	غير صحي	need	يحتاج
poor	فقير	eggs	بيض	buy	يشترى
mango	مانجو	bake	يخبز	carrots	جزر
collect	يجمع	beanstalk	ساق الفاصوليا	boil	يغلي
chocolate	شوكولاتة	shopping list	قائمة مشتريات	giant	عملاق
weigh out	يزن	coconuts	جوز الهند	pineapple	ثمرة أناناس
cage	قفص	semolina	دقيق السميد	oven	فرن
diamond	شكل المعين	beans	فول	tomatoes	طماطم
castle	قلعة	saucepan	قدر /إناء	onions	بصل
rich	غني	chop	يقطع	different	مختلف

Unit 2

sports	ألعاب رياضية	dream	حلم	climb trees	يتسلق الأشجار
medal	ميدالية	kung fu	كونغ فو	high kicks	ركلات عالية
do jigsaws	يحل الصور المتقطعة	Moroccan	معرني	karate	كاراتيه
karate suit	بدلة الكاراتيه	walk across the desert	يمشي عبر الصحراء	athlete	لاعب رياضي
taekwondo	تايكوونديو	football pitch	ملعب كرة القدم	write poems	يكتب قصائد
special needs	احتياجات خاصة	football	كرة القدم	football boots	أحذية كرة القدم
help in the kitchen	يساعد في المطبخ	compete	ينافس	handball	كرة اليد
team	فريق	competitor	منافس	tennis	تنس
tennis court	ملعب تنس	do math	يحل المسائل الحسابية	water pollution	تلوث الماء
squash	اسكواش	rackets	مضارب	breathe	يتنفس
harmful	ضار	sailing	إبحار	swimming pool	حمام السباحة
greenhouse	صوبة زراعية	amazing	مذهل	swimming	السباحة
swimming goggles	نظارات السباحة	equipment	معدات	organisms	الكائنات الحية
match	مباراة	lungs	الرئتين	crabs	كانوريا
club	نادي	Egyptian	مصري	habitats	أماكن المعيشة
game	لعبة	nightmare	كابوس	famous	مشهور
factories	مصانع	awesome	رائع	toxic	سام
Olympic Games	ألعاب أوليمبية	garbage	قمامة	awful	فظيع / مرعب
emissions	عوادم	destroy	يدمر	chemicals	مواد كيميائية
shade	ظل	prize	جائزة	wildlife	الحياة البرية



Practice



on Vocabulary (Units 1 & 2)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 A: What's your favourite ? B: I like chicken.
a) food b) drink c) juice d) sport
البحيرة - إدارة رشيد 2024
- 2 We love chocolate, but it isn't
a) unhealthy b) favorite c) healthy d) nice
البحيرة - إدارة رشيد 2024
- 3 We the syrup over the basbousa.
a) chop b) collect c) grow d) pour
المنوفية - شبين الكوم 2024
- 4 are gases from cars or factories.
a) Shade b) Greenhouses c) Emissions d) Toxic
القليوبية - إدارة قنايات 2024
- 5 A is a very large building built a long time ago.
a) house b) park c) castle d) home
الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق 2024
- 6 To is to pick something up quickly.
a) grab b) pour c) cut d) chop
بورسعيد 2024
- 7 He is a very big person, he is
a) lucky b) small c) a giant d) rich
بورسعيد 2024
- 8 I've got a sweater. It's lined white and pink.
a) sunburned b) dark c) spotted d) striped
بورسعيد 2024
- 9 The farmer uses his to cut the wood.
a) hen b) axe c) spoon d) fork
القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
- 10 A is a box in which we keep animals.
a) cage b) book c) tree d) pot
لبحيرة - إدارة رشيد 2024
- 11 I like swimming. I wear swimming to protect my eyes.
a) goggles b) boots c) glasses d) sandals
بورسعيد 2024
- 12 She likes water sports. She is very good at
a) tennis b) karate c) swimming d) handball
البحيرة 2024
- 13 A is a very bad dream.
a) emission b) smoke c) nightmare d) breath
القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024
- 14 I always wear my football when I play football.
a) goggles b) belts c) boots d) rackets
- 15 She is bad at doing
a) book b) pen c) math d) nice
التربية - إدارة قها 2024
- 16 We can buy and sell things at the
a) school b) library c) bark d) market
البحيرة 2024

17 Water pollution is very

- a) useful b) good c) helpful d) harmful

الإسكندرية - إدارة المتزه 2024

18 We use our to play squash.

- a) goggles b) rackets c) boots d) hats

البحيرة - إدارة رشيد 2024

19 A/An is a glass building used for growing plants.

- a) nightmare b) shade c) greenhouse d) emission

20 The farmer fresh vegetables at the market.

- a) plants b) bakes c) sells d) grows

الإسكندرية - إدارة المتزه 2024



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

met – grapes – buy – rich – special

القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

Jack went to sell his cow in the market. On his way, he (1)..... an old man. The man had (2)..... beans. He wanted Jack to (3)..... them. He said the beans will make Jack (4)..... . Jack bought the beans at last.

B)

market – lunch – unhealthy – rice – healthy

الإسكندرية - المتزه 2024

My favorite food is fish. Fish is (1)..... . Mother buys fish from the (2)..... . She cooks it for (3)..... . We eat fish with (4)..... and salad. Eating fish is very important for our body. We eat fish once a week.

C)

born – famous – medal – flag – big

الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق 2024

Hedaya Malak is a (1)..... Egyptian taekwondo player. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian (2)..... at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She was (3)..... on April, 1993. She won the bronze (4)..... at the Rio Olympics in 2016.

D)

suit – racket – twice – famous – go

Heba loves tennis. She practices tennis (1)..... a week. She usually uses her (2)..... to play with her friend. Amany's favorite sport is karate. She wears her (3)..... to do karate. She practices on the court. She wants to be a (4)..... player.



Unit 1

Countable and uncountable nouns

Countable nouns:

- هي الأسماء التي (تُعد) ولها مفرد وجمع.
- الأسماء التي تُعد تسبق بأداة تكرة (a/an) إذا كانت مفردة.

3 - a ball → balls
- an ant → ants

Uncountable nouns:

- هي الأسماء التي (لا تُعد) ليس لها جمع وتعامل معاملة المفرد.
- الأسماء التي لا تُعد لا تسبق بأداة تكرة (a/an).

3 milk – bread

a – an

- تستخدم "a" قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت (حرف ساكن).

3 - a book - a monkey

- تستخدم "an" قبل الأسماء المفردة المعدودة التي تبدأ بصوت (حرف متحرك).

3 - an onion - an egg

some/ any with countable and uncountable nouns

- تستخدم «some» مع الجمل المثبتة والعرض والطلب.

some اسم يُعد جمع / اسم لا يُعد +

Affirmative

الجملة المصحة

- Hana has some orange juice.
- The children ate some candies after lunch.

Offer/ Request

العرض، الطلب

- Would you like some pineapples? (عرض)
- B: Yes, please.
- A Can I have some rice, please? (طلب)
- B: Sure.

- تستخدم «any» مع الجمل المنفية والسؤال ومع الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة.

any اسم يُعد جمع / اسم لا يُعد +

Negative sentence

الجملة المصحة

- There isn't any water.
- We don't have any onions.

Question

سؤال

- Are there any books on the table?
- Is there any butter in the fridge?

To Express Offers & Requests التعبير عن العروض والطلبات

Expressing Offers التعبير عن العروض

أعرض لك شيء ما / أقدّم لك شيء ما / أقدّم لك شيء ما / أقدّم لك شيء ما

1 A: What would you like? → B: I would like + () .

A: I would like , please. - I would like some , please.

2 A: How about + (verb + ing)/(noun)? B: Yes, please.
A: Would you like some + noun? B: No, thank you.

eg: - A: Would you like an orange? B: Yes, please.

- A: How about buying some lemons? B: No, thanks.

Expressing Requests التعبير عن الطلبات

Can I have some + (noun), please?

eg: - A: Can I have some grapes, too? B: Yes, of course.

Unit 11

great/ good/ bad + at

We use 'good/ great/ bad + at' to talk about things we do or don't do well.

نستخدم (good, great, bad + at) للتحدث عن الأشياء التي نفعلها بشكل جيد.

Form

Subject () + (am/is/are) + great at/ good at/ bad at + inf. + ing ...

- I'm very good at playing football.
- He is very bad at speaking French.

Subject () + (am/is/are) + great at/ good at/ bad at + noun ()

- I'm great at tennis.
- She is very bad at karate.



لاحظ عند إضافة (ing) للفعل:

١. إذا انتهى الفعل بـ (e)، فإنها تحذف عند إضافة الـ (ing): smile → smiling

٢. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبوق بمتحرك، فإن الحرف الساكن الأخير يتم مضاعفته عند إضافة الـ (ing):

stop → stopping clap → clapping





Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Can I have water, Sama?
 a) an b) a c) some d) any
- 2 There aren't books in the bag.
 a) some b) no c) a d) any
- 3 I have orange for breakfast.
 a) some b) any c) an d) a
- 4 Do you like to have eggs?
 a) some b) any c) a d) an
- 5 Would you like to eat cake?
 a) any b) some c) no d) an
- 6 I don't have money to buy this mobile.
 a) an b) any c) some d) a
- 7 How about television together?
 a) watch b) watching c) watched d) watches
- 8 Are there any in the fridge?
 a) sugar b) meat c) tomatoes d) butter
- 9 Do you have potatoes?
 a) an b) some c) any d) a
- 10 Are there boys in the class?
 a) some b) any c) an d) a
- 11 I am good at English.
 a) speaking b) speaks c) spoke d) speak
- 12 Salma is great at pictures.
 a) draws b) draw c) drew d) drawing
- 13 They are bad at chess.
 a) play b) playing c) played d) plays
- 14 What sports you good at?
 a) do b) are c) have d) can
- 15 Sara likes handball because she is at playing it.
 a) bad b) great c) short d) small
- 16 I am better at playing squash I am at football.
 a) thin b) then c) than d) the

- 17 Rana is good at her mother at home.
a) helping b) help c) helps d) helped
- 18 My father is a cook, and he is great making shawerma.
a) to b) by c) at d) for
- 19 He is good at jigsaws.
a) playing b) doing c) going d) having
- 20 She is good at playing the piano, but she is at playing drums.
a) good b) great c) bad d) big

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Would you like (a) coffee?
- 2 Ali hasn't got (some) grapes in his dish. الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024
- 3 Can I have (any) orange juice?
- 4 How about (buy) some oranges? القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2024
- 5 There are (any) mangoes. الإسكندرية - إدارة المتزه 2024
- 6 There (aren't) any sugar in the kitchen.
- 7 There is (a) apple in the basket. القليوبية - قها 2024
- 8 Do you have (some) carrots, please? القليوبية - إدارة شبرا الخيمة 2024
- 9 There aren't (some) tomatoes in the fridge. السويس 2024
- 10 Is there (some) jam in the fridge? القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
- 11 (Are) there any milk? بورسعيد 2024
- 12 I would like (any) carrots, please. الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024
- 13 Are there (some) tomatoes? البحيرة 2024
- 14 Monkeys are good at (climb) trees. بورسعيد 2024
- 15 Shady is better (then) his brother.
- 16 How about (visit) Cairo? بورسعيد 2024
- 17 Eslam (be) good at playing basketball.
- 18 Mona is bad at (speak) English. بورسعيد 2024
- 19 We (be) bad at doing taekwondo.
- 20 Ali is bad (on) drawing. الإسكندرية - إدارة المتزه 2024



Unit 3

clothes	ملابس	striped	مخطط	exciting	شيق / مثير
sunburned	مصاب بحروق الشمس	T-shirt	تيشرت	suitcase	حقيرة السفر
excited	متشوق / متحمس	hidden	مخفي	sunglasses	نظارة شمسية
coat	معطف / بالطو	sleeves	أكمام	festival	مهرجان/عيد
swimming shorts	شورت السباحة	galabeya	جلابية	pockets	جيوب
honest	صالح / أمين	scarf	وشاح (كوفية)	trip	رحلة
stripes	خطوط	tired	متعب	sweater	قميص صوف
holiday	إجازة	crown	تاج	shoemaker	صانع الأحذية
sneakers	حذاء رياضي	uniform	زي موحد	gloves	قفازات
leather	جلد	necklace	عقد	pack	يحزم الحفائب أو الأمتعة
school project	مشروع مدرسي	elves	أقزام	pajamas	بيجامه
wear	يرتدي	information	معلومات	pay	يدفع
spotted	منقط	comfortable	مريح	traditional	تقليدي
trousers	بنطلون	pale	فاتح	light	فاتح
feasts	أعياد	celebrations	احتفالات	silver	فضة

Unit 4

world	العالم	Tombs of the Nobles	مقابر النبلاء	eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية
hotel	فندق	look after	يعتني بـ	reign	فترة الحكم
eco-tourists	السياح البيئيين	plane journeys	رحلات طيران	visit	يزور
calendar	تقويم	Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة	culture	ثقافة
mountain	جبل	history	تاريخ	UNESCO	منظمة اليونسكو
preserve	يحافظ على	lake	بحيرة	quite	إلى حد ما
local people	السكان المحليون	dive	بغطس	waterfall	سلال
sunset	غروب الشمس	eco-resort	منتجع بيئي	forest	غابة
travel	يسافر	eco-village	قرية بيئية	valley	وادي
coral reefs	شعاب مرجانية	Temple of Philae	معبد فيلة	tour guide	مرشد سياحي
rare	نادر	island	جزيرة	postcard	بطاقة بريدية
environment	البيئة	Nubian ibex	الوعل النوبي	city	مدينة
Aswan Botanical Garden	حديقة أسوان النباتية	historical	تاريخي	friendly	ودود
fascinating	جذاب / ساحر	hiking	جولة على الأقدام (التزهر)	quiet	هادئ
eco-lodges	مساكن بيئية	scream	يصرخ	scratch	يخدش
screw	مسامر	throat	حلق	throne	عرش
string	خيط	monuments	آثار تاريخية	structure	بناء / هيكل
eco-destination	وجهة بيئية	camps	معسكرات	Nawamis	قرية نواميس



Practice



on Vocabulary (Units 3 & 4)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Galabeyas have , but they are hidden. القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024
 a) sleeves b) socks c) pockets d) crowns
- 2 A has long white sleeves. الإسكندرية - إدارة شرق 2024
 a) T-shirt b) skirt c) galabeya d) hat
- 3 Can you help me my suitcases for our holiday tomorrow? القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة 2024
 a) wait b) pack c) sink d) back
- 4 I walk around a lot. I need comfortable القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024
 a) coat b) sneakers c) scarf d) necklace
- 5 There is no , so the island is very quiet. بورسعيد 2024
 a) farms b) traffic c) rivers d) buildings
- 6 Take your It's very sunny today. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
 a) scarf b) suitcase c) sneakers d) sunglasses
- 7 The sombrero is a traditional Mexican القاهرة - المرح 2024
 a) shoe b) dress c) hat d) robe
- 8 The makes shoes from leather. المصوئية - شبين الكوم 2024
 a) farmer b) shoemaker c) vet d) carpenter
- 9 Tourists dive in the Red Sea to see the reefs. بورسعيد 2024
 a) plant b) coral c) shark d) rock
- 10 The galabeya is cool because it's made from البحيرة 2024
 a) cotton b) paper c) plastic d) metal
- 11 Dresses are types of القليوبية - إدارة طوخ 2024
 a) sports b) meals c) clothes d) teams
- 12 You can know today's date from the on the wall. الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024
 a) calendar b) waterfall c) lake d) island
- 13 Tourists in the Red Sea. الإسكندرية - إدارة المتزه 2024
 a) dive b) drive c) build d) grow
- 14 People wear sweaters and in cold weather. الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024
 a) goggles b) shorts c) coats d) rings
- 15 She's a very good climber. She climbs القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
 a) mountains b) islands c) forests d) waterfalls
- 16 Elephantine Island is full of الإسكندرية - إدارة الجمرات 2024
 a) history b) Arabic c) math d) science



17 He is kind and All people love him.

- a) ugly b) lazy c) honest d) angry

القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024

18 Tourism gives for local people.

- a) villages b) jobs c) farms d) rice

القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس 2024

19 You can see a lot of trees in the

- a) coral reef b) waterfall c) desert d) forest

الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024

20 tell the tourists where they can dive.

- a) Doctors b) Tour guides c) Teachers d) Vets

القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

bright – dresses – feasts – stripes – hat

Girls in Mexico wear traditional Mexican (1)..... . They are very colorful. There are many colorful (2)..... on the dresses. Girls in Mexico like to wear those dresses during celebrations and (3)..... . Mexican girls really love (4)..... colors. Even when they are not celebrating, they wear colorful clothes. They are really amazing.

B)

historical – learn – pros – cons – jobs

القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024

Tourism is very important to Egypt. It can give (1)..... for young people. It can help people (2)..... about new cultures. But tourism also has some (3)..... . Tourists can damage the (4)..... places and the monuments.

C)

Elephantine – calm – Nobles – Museum – Nile

القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024

I'm Mai. I'm on (1)..... Island. It's in Aswan. I arrived yesterday. There are lots of things to do and see. I want to go to the Aswan (2)..... today. I want to go for walks on the island because the island is a beautiful (3)..... place. I also want to walk to the Tombs of the (4)..... . I'm very excited.

D)

pockets – cotton – skirt – robe – galabeya

السويس 2024

The Egyptian people wear many traditional clothes. Many men wear the (1)..... . This is a long white (2)..... that is very popular. It looks really cool to wear. It's made from (3)..... and is usually white. It has (4)....., but they are hidden.

Unit

1. Infinitive of Purpose صيغة المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض

We use "to + infinitive" to express purpose, and to say why someone does something:

Form

... (الفعل في المصدر) to + infinitive

- eg: - We went to the park to play with our friends.
- Sherif bought a new suitcase to go on holiday.



We use "Why" to ask about purpose.

نستخدم "لماذا" لسؤال عن الغرض.

- eg: A: Why did Tarek buy a racket?
B: Tarek bought a racket to play tennis.

2. The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

We use the past simple tense to express actions that started and ended in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن الأحداث التي بدأت وانتهت في الماضي.

... التصريف الثاني للفعل + (فاعل) Subject

1. Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها ()
talk → talke

الأفعال المنتهية بـ () يضاف لها (d)
move → moved

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن + () ، يحذف حرف الـ () ويضاف (ied)
cry → cryied

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف ساكن مسبق بمتحرك، يضاف لها (ed)
مع مضاعفة الحرف الساكن:
clap → clapped

- eg: Yesterday, I played football.

2. Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

buy → bought go → went do → did

e.g. Eslam **bought** a new car last year.

Negative Form

Subject + **didn't** + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

e.g. She **didn't** finish her homework yesterday.

Yes/No Question

Question السؤال Did subject ...?

Answer الإجابة B. Yes, subject **did.**
B. No, subject **didn't.**

e.g. A: Did Tarek **buy** a racket?

B: Yes, he **did**.

OR

B: No, he **didn't**.

Question السؤال

A: Wh- word
(كلمة الاستفهام)

did

subject

...? (الفعل في المصدر) (inf.)

Answer الإجابة

B: Subject + التصريف الثاني للفعل ...

e.g. A: Where **did** you **go** last week?

B: I **went** to the zoo last week.

Keywords

yesterday

last

ago

in the past

Verb to "be" in the past simple

فعل يكون في زمن الماضي البسيط

I/He/She/It + was/wasn't ...



- Ahmed **was** sick yesterday.

- It **wasn't** a nice game yesterday.

We/They/You + were/weren't ...



- We **were** in Alexandria last summer.

- Hany and Hana **weren't** happy yesterday.

Unit

The Past Continuous Tense زمن الماضي المستمر

We use the past continuous tense for something that happened and continued over a period of time in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضي المستمر لحدث عن شيء حدث واستمر بفترة من الوقت في الماضي.

Affirmative Form: صيغة الإثبات

I/ He/ She/ It	was	(inf.) + ing ...
You/ We/ They	were	

e.g. I **was listening** to music yesterday evening.

I/ He/ She/ It	was not (wasn't)	(inf.) + ing + ...
You/ We/ They	were not (weren't)	

They **weren't swimming** in the sea yesterday morning.

(Question السؤال)	Was Were	I/ he/ she/ it you/ we/ they	(inf.) + ing ... ?
(Answer الإجابة)	Yes, No	subject	was/ were. wasn't weren't

e.g. A **Was she doing** her homework?

B: Yes, she **was**.

OR

B: No, she **wasn't**.

all (day / morning / evening / night / yesterday)

at (6, 7, 8, ...) o'clock / am / pm / yesterday

The children **were playing** football **a morning** yesterday.

Ali **was studying** Arabic at **7 pm** yesterday.



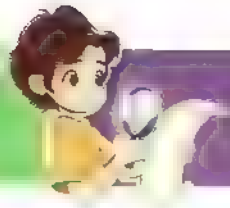
اسم كيف تصف (ing) بالفعل.

١. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) صامت يسبقه حرف ساكن، فإننا نحذف الـ (e) عند إضافة الـ (ing):

make ➔ making take ➔ taking

٢. إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن يسبقه حرف متحرك، فإننا نضاعف الحرف الأخير عند إضافة الـ (ing):

swim ➔ swimming shop ➔ shopping



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 She needs to her suitcases.
a) packs b) pack c) packing d) packed
- 2 Ahmed went to the town buy new sneakers.
a) for b) with c) at d) to
- 3 did he go to the supermarket? B He went there to buy ice cream.
a) Which b) Who c) Why d) What
- 4 I bought a new mobile my friends.
a) call b) to calling c) calls d) to call
- 5 My father always goes to the bakery to some bread.
a) buys b) buy c) buying d) bought
- 6 He at home yesterday.
a) is b) were c) was d) are
- 7 They scared last night because they didn't want to see the lion.
a) are b) was c) is d) were
- 8 She a sandcastle last week.
a) build b) built c) builds d) building
- 9 Eslam swim in the pool yesterday.
a) don't b) doesn't c) didn't d) isn't
- 10 Did Sara her homework two hours ago?
a) does b) doing c) do d) did
- 11 We were football at 7 pm yesterday.
a) played b) playing c) plays d) play
- 12 you watching television all day yesterday? B No, I wasn't.
a) Are b) Did c) Were d) Was
- 13 She studying English yesterday evening.
a) is b) was c) were d) are
- 14 A: Were you sleeping at 9 pm yesterday? B: Yes, I
a) was b) were c) is d) am
- 15 They swimming yesterday morning.
a) isn't b) aren't c) wasn't d) weren't
- 16 Was making a cake at 8 o'clock yesterday?
a) you b) we c) he d) they

- 17 We squash at 7 pm yesterday.
 a) playing b) played c) were playing d) was playing
- 18 A Were they having their breakfast? B: No, they
 a) were b) was c) weren't d) wasn't
- 19 What was she at 7 am yesterday?
 a) does b) did c) doing d) do
- 20 Where you sleeping yesterday evening?
 a) did b) are c) were d) do

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 He went to the shop to (buying) bread. القاهرة - إدارة السلام 2024
- 2 They (go) to the cinema yesterday. القاهرة - إدارة دار السلام 2024
- 3 She (buys) a red dress for the party last week.
- 4 Amira didn't (cooks) yesterday.
- 5 Did you (visited) your uncle last night?
- 6 We (don't) play handball yesterday.
- 7 I went to the supermarket () buy milk. القاهرة - إدارة غرب مدينة نصر 2024
- 8 Everyone () a job in Ancient Egypt. الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024
- 9 What did they () at the supermarket? القاهرة - إدارة عين شمس 2024
- 10 She didn't () her homework yesterday. القليوبية - إدارة طوح 2024
- 11 I (were) traveling by boat to the island.
- 12 He () volleyball yesterday morning. المنوفية - شمس الكوم 2024
- 13 They () swimming in the lake at 6 o'clock yesterday. القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024
- 14 Were they climbing mountains all day yesterday? B Yes, they (wasn't).
- 15 I () watching a football match at 9 pm yesterday.
- 16 She was () a book at seven o'clock yesterday. البحيرة - إدارة رشيد 2024
- 17 Mona () studying English when her father came. القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024
- 18 They (sleep) at six yesterday. القليوبية - إدارة هرب شبرا الخيمة 2024
- 19 What (be) she doing yesterday morning?
- 20 Ali (visits) Samy yesterday. القليوبية - إدارة قها 2024

Units 5 & 6



A) Revision on Vocabulary

Unit 5

scribe	كاتب	a desert ecosystem	نظام بيئي صحراوي	buzz	يطنّ
the worst	الأسوأ	trader	تاجر	a rockpool ecosystem	نظام بيئي لبركة الصخور
knock	يخبط / يطرق	teamwork	عمل جماعي	craftsman	حرفي
living	شيء حي	injured	مصاب	experiment	تجربة علمية
hieroglyphs	اللغة الهيروغليفية	non-living	غير حي	operation	عملية جراحية
school concert	حفلة مدرسية	fisherman	صياد السمك	sunlight	ضوء الشمس
check	يفحص / يراجع	aim	هدف	fields	حقول
crab	كابوريا	scare	يحيّف	teammate	زميل في الفريق
grains	حبوب	seaweed	أعشاب بحرية	keen on	يحب
harvest	يحصّد	sculptures	منحوتات	Amazon rainforest	غابات الأمازون الاستوائية
office job	وظيفة مكتبية	strange	غريب	weave	ينسج
grasshopper	الجراد	solving problems	حل المشاكل	surprised	متفاجئ
a marine ecosystem	نظام بيئي بحري	fence	سور	work out	يحل / يكتشف
Earth	كوكب الأرض	a freshwater ecosystem	نظام بيئي للمياه العذبة	relaxing	مسترخ
solutions	حلول	source	مصدر	jewelry	مجوهرات
female ruler	الحاكمة	paintings	رسومات / لوحات	flax	بدور الكتان
linen	كتان	pharaohs	فراعنة	menu	قائمة الطعام
boss	قائد / زعيم	knife	سكين	sharp	حاد
manager	مدير	delicious	شهي	customers	عملاء / زبائن
university	جامعة	lovely	جميل / رائع	computer programmer	مبرمج كمبيوتر

Unit 6

weather	الطقس	temperature	درجة الحرارة	sunny	شمس
cloud	سحابة	degrees	درجات	classmates	زملاء الفصل
rain	مطر	climate	المناخ	frightening	مخيف
snow	جليد	tornado	إعصار	twist	يلتف / يلتوي
rainbow	قوس قزح	tidal wave	موجة عارمة	destroy	يهدم
candles	شموع	strong winds/storm	رياح شديدة / عاصفة	electric wires	أسلاك كهربائية
warm	دافئ	sandstorm	عاصفة رملية	power cut	انقطاع التيار (الكهرباء)
ice	ثلج	flood	فيضان	torches	كشافات
windy	عاصف	heat wave	موجة حارة	lightning	البرق
rainy	ممطر	shade	ظل	electric shock	صدمة كهربائية
cloudy	غائم	season	فصل	air conditioning	مكيف الهواء



Practice



on Vocabulary (Units 5 & 6)



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 could write everything down and they kept records and lists for important things.
a) Farmers b) Doctors c) Traders d) Scribes
- 2 are the system of writing which people used it in Ancient Egypt.
a) List b) Hieroglyphs c) Marker d) Grain
- 3 Ancient Egyptian made beautiful paintings and gold jewelry. الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024
a) craftsmen b) farmers c) teachers d) nurses
- 4 I built a strong to protect the garden. القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024
a) school b) factory c) hospital d) fence
- 5 Farmers in Ancient Egypt worked in which were near their homes.
a) beaches b) fields c) coasts d) rivers
- 6 Sama helps animals if they are sick or
a) happy b) pleased c) injured d) beautiful
- 7 The in Ancient Egypt bought and sold things like gold. القاهرة - إدارة المقطم 2024
a) vet b) scribe c) fisherman d) trader
- 8 After it rains, we can see the in the sky. المنوفية - إدارة سهرس الليان 2024
a) fire b) rainbow c) ring d) sand
- 9 are buzzing all the day. القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024
a) Snakes b) Ants c) Cats d) Bees
- 10 is something that isn't alive. القاهرة - إدارة المقطم 2024
a) Living b) Non-living c) Rock pool d) Rainforest
- 11 A is a small eco-system. القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2024
a) rockpool b) river c) city d) village
- 12 Sunlight and water are things. القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2024
a) non-living b) living c) forest d) thinking
- 13 Ecosystem is the between living and non-living things. القاهرة - إدارة الشروق 2024
a) connection b) time c) game d) road
- 14 Randa is a, she looks after sick animals. القليوبية - إدارة غرب شبرا الخيمة 2024
a) computer programmer b) vet
c) mechanic d) dentist
- 15 The is the most important source of fresh water in Egypt. البحيرة 2024
a) River Nile b) Red Sea c) ocean d) lake
- 16 I'm so hot! Let's sit in the
a) shade b) sun c) nightmare d) costume

- 17 When there's a lot of water in the whole streets, it is a/an
 a) heatwave b) earthquake c) tornado d) flood
- 18 A means the temperature goes very high.
 a) tornado b) heatwave c) shade d) flood
- 19 It is very dangerous to touch the They will give you an electric shock.
 a) clothes b) chairs c) electric wires d) pots
- ❑ Don't go if there's a sandstorm.
 a) outside b) inside c) school d) home

القاهرة - إدارة المقطم 2024



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

A)

rainforest – ecosystem – sunlight – rockpool – eco-tourist

The connection between living and non-living things is called (1)..... . They can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon (2)..... . The living things in a (3) are fish, crabs, and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and (4)..... . All these things work together to make an ecosystem.

B)

jewelry – Egyptian – paintings – juice – learn

البحيرة 2024

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very, very good. They drew beautiful (1) Also, they made beautiful gold (2) and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Fewer people worked as scribes. Scribes knew how to read and write well. (3)..... writing was not easy to (4)

C)

stop – shut – protect – on – off

الإسكندرية - إدارة غرب 2024

To stay safe during a sandstorm, you have to follow some instructions. Wear a scarf to (1) your face. Stay inside, so the sand can't get in your month. Drive to the side of the road, so you can (2)..... your car. Make sure your windows are (3)..... , so no sand get in. Turn (4)..... air conditioning to stop the sand from coming in.

D)

grew – fields – farmers – job – fish

القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2024

Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a (1) They could be fishermen, bakers, or doctors. But most people worked as (2)..... . They worked in (3)..... near their homes. They (4)..... crops, like wheat and corn. Ancient Egyptians craftsmen were good.



Unit 5

The Present Simple Tense زمن المضارع البسيط

We use the present simple to talk about habits, routines, and things we do every day.

نستخدم المضارع البسيط للتحدث عن العادات والروتين والامور التي نقوم بها كل يوم.

(I, We, You, They) + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر ...

e.g. We **cook** lots of delicious food.

(He, She, It) + (inf.) + (s/ es/ ies) الفعل في المصدر ...

At midday, the manager **opens** the restaurant.

لاحظ

معظم الأفعال يضاف لها (s):

s She **eats** fruits every day.

الأفعال المنتهية بـ () يضاف لها (es):

es She **catches** a bus to school.

الأفعال المنتهية بحرف () يسبقه حرف ساكن، يتم حذف الـ () ويضاف للفعل (ies):

ies He **flies** a plane.



إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف الـ () يسبقه حرف متحرك (a, e, i, o, u)، أضيف حرف الـ (s) فقط:

e.g. He **plays** computer games at the weekend.

(I, We, You, They) + don't + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر ...

e.g. I **don't eat** cheese for breakfast.

(He, She, It) + doesn't + (inf.) الفعل في المصدر ...

e.g. My sister **doesn't study** at Cairo University.

Verbally Questions

Question السؤال	Do	I /you /we /they	...? (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر)
	Does	he /she /it	
Answer الإجابة	Yes,	subject	do does
	No,		don't doesn't

Do you drive to work?

B: Yes, I do.

Or

B: No, I don't.

Does the child play computer games?

B: Yes, he does

Or

B: No, he doesn't.

Wh- word

كلمة الاستفهام

do
does

I /you /we /they
he /she /it

...? (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر)

What do you do on the weekend?

B: I play football.

When does Dad arrive home?

B: He arrives at 6 pm.

يجب أن / يجب ألا must / mustn't

We use "must" when we talk about something that we have to do.

عندما نتحدث عن شيء يجب علينا القيام به نستخدم "must" بمعنى "يجب أن".

We use "mustn't" "must not", when we are not allowed to do something.

وعندما لا نسمح بنا بفعل شيء ما نستخدم "mustn't" بمعنى "يجب ألا".

Subject (فاعل) + must + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

99 You must look after the environment.

Subject (فاعل) + mustn't (must not) + (inf.) (الفعل في المصدر) ...

99 You mustn't forget to take a hat today.

Adverbs of Frequency ظروف التكرار

We use adverbs of frequency with the present simple to say how often we do things.

نستخدم ظروف التكرار مع المضارع البسيط لنعبر عن التكرار.

always
100%

usually
80%

sometimes
50%

never
0%

Subject
(فاعل)

adverbs of frequency
ظروف التكرار

main verb
(الفعل الأساسي)

I **always** visit my grandparents on Saturdays.

لاحظ أن (verb to be) يسبق ظروف التكرار:

Subject
(فاعل)

verb to be (am / is / are)

adverbs of frequency
ظروف التكرار

Ola **is never** tired after work.

Wh- questions with "How often ...?" in the present simple tense:

How often

do + (I/we/they/you)
does + (he/she/it)

...? (inf.) (غير من المفرد)

OR

Subject + (always usually often sometimes never) + main verb ...

Subject + (am/ is/ are) + (always usually often sometimes never) ...

e.g.

A: How often do you play tennis?

B: I **never** play tennis. I can't play!



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 They television at night.
a) watches b) watching c) watch d) are watched
- 2 Samy always up early.
a) gets b) get c) getting d) got
- 3 Samy and Ramy English every day.
a) studies b) study c) studying d) is studying
- 4 She like eating pizza.
a) isn't b) aren't c) doesn't d) don't
- 5 We sleep late.
a) isn't b) aren't c) doesn't d) don't
- 6 We don't our English book.
a) forget b) forgets c) forgot d) forgetting
- 7 You must your English homework.
a) does b) do c) did d) doing
- 8 We talk in the library.
a) mustn't b) should c) must d) are
- 9 You mustn't in the class.
a) eating b) ate c) eat d) eats
- 10 Children must milk.
a) drank b) drinks c) drinking d) drink
- 11 They video games on the weekends.
a) plays always b) always play c) play always d) play never
- 12 How often your friend play football?
a) do b) does c) is d) are
- 13 How often your friends travel to Luxor?
a) do b) does c) is d) are
- 14 Salma usually her lunch at home.
a) have b) has c) having d) to have
- 15 She late for school.
a) always is b) never is c) is never d) usually is
- 16 Amira never squash.
a) plays b) playing c) play d) played
- 17 We go to school on Fridays.
a) always b) usually c) often d) never

- 18 How do you study English? B I always study English.
 a) many b) much c) often d) long
- 19 Ahmed salad. He doesn't like it.
 a) always eat b) never eats c) eats never d) eat always
- 20 They in the sea.
 a) usually swim b) usually swims c) swim usually d) swims usually



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1 Mona (catch) the bus to Cairo every day. القليوبية - إدارة الخانكة 2024
- 2 Ali never (play) video games in the morning.
- 3 You mustn't (walking) on the grass. القاهرة 1 - إدارة شرق مدينة نصر 2024
- 4 They (doesn't) like playing tennis.
- 5 She is ill. She (تذهب) go to the doctor. القاهرة - إدارة القاهرة الجديدة 2024
- 6 We (has) a big garden.
- 7 Sara (don't) bake cakes.
- 8 I must (bought) some oranges.
- 9 What (can) he play at the club every day? القليوبية - إدارة بها 2024
- 10 You must (be) careful when you use the sharp knife.
- 11 How often (does) Sara and Ola do sports?
- 12 Omar doesn't (speaking) Italian.
- 13 I (eat usually) healthy food.
- 14 You (must) drink from the canal. It is dangerous.
- 15 She always (talk) on her phone. القليوبية - إدارة قليوب 2024
- 16 She (always is) tired after training.
- 17 A How (many) do you visit your uncle? B: Always.
- 18 We must (following) our school rules.
- 19 We (always are) happy.
- 20 Mazin (watches never) English movies.

Conjugation of Verbs

Regular verbs الأفعال المنتظمة

Present	Past	Present	Past	Present	Past
like يحب	liked	collect يجمع	collected	need يحتاج	needed
visit يزور	visited	count يعد	counted	save يقد	saved
chop يقطع	chopped	grab يترع	grabbed	bake يخبز	baked
boil يغلي	boiled	mix يخلط	mixed	pour يصب	poured
weight out يزن	weighed out	turn on يشغل	turned on	add يضيف	added
try يحرب	tried	agree يوافق	agreed	smell يشم	smelled
stay يبقى	stayed	remember يتذكر	remembered	wait ينتظر	waited
breathe يتنفس	breathed	climb يتسلق	climbed	cook يطهو	cooked
walk يمشي	walked	play يلعب	played	help يساعد	helped
kick يركل	kicked	practice يتدرب	practiced	compete يتنافس	competed
pack يحزم أمتعته	packed	celebrate يحتفل	celebrated	borrow يستعير	borrowed
believe يعتقد	believed	thank يشكر	thanked	call ينادي	called
dance يرقص	danced	wash يغسل	washed	tidy يرتب	tidied
clean ينظف	cleaned	deliver يوصل	delivered	live يعيش	lived
work يعمل	worked	enjoy يستمتع	enjoyed	fix يصلح	fixed
slow يبطأ	slowed	dress يرتدي	dressed	taste يتذوق	tasted
carry يحمل	carried	promise يعد	promised	miss يشتاق	missed
travel يسافر	traveled	cause يسبب	caused	preserve يحفظ	preserved
create يبدع	created	damage يدمر	damaged	weave يسج	wove
survive ينجو	survived	buzz يطن	buzzed	rest يستريح	rested
harvest يحصد	harvested	reply يرد	replied	ignore يتجاهل	ignored
prefer يفضل	preferred	check يفحص	checked	scare يخيف	scared
rain يمطر	rained	pass يمر	passed	knock بطرق	knocked
destroy يدمر	destroyed	move يحرك	moved	protect يحمي	protected

Irregular verbs الأفعال غير المنتظمة

Present		Past	Present		Past
grow	يررع	grew	go	يذهب	went
think	يعتقد	thought	catch	يمسك	caught
say	يقول	said	find	يجد	found
cut	يقطع	cut	spend	يقضي	spent
fall	يسقط	fell	fly	يطير	flew
do	يفعل	did	bring	يُحضر	brought
lose	يخسر	lost	drive	يقود	drove
hide	يختبئ	hid	buy	يشترى	bought
leave	يعادر	left	get	يحصل على	got
see	يرى	saw	throw	يرمي	threw
dive	يقطس	dove	know	يعرف	knew
shine	يشرق	shone	keep	يحافظ على	kept
teach	يعلم	taught	write	يكتب	wrote
hurt	يؤدى	hurt	give	يعطي	gave
sell	يبيع	sold	sleep	ينام	slept
come	يأتى	came	pay	يدفع	paid
meet	يقابل	met	understand	يفهم	understood
win	يفوز	won	become	يصح	became
sit	يجلس	sat	hear	يسمع	heard
make	يصنع	made	mean	يعنى	meant
wear	يرتدى	wore	take	يأخذ	took





Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

- 1 I was watching an old match. (الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- a) football b) squash c) tennis d) handball
- 2 Raneem was the match.
- a) running b) winning c) watching d) losing
- 3 I like to squash and watch it, too.
- a) go b) make c) do d) play
- 4 I play squash with my friend Hossam every
- a) Friday b) Sunday c) Monday d) Thursday



Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 To cut something is to it.
- a) mix b) eat c) drink d) chop
- 2 A is someone who learned how to read and write in Ancient Egypt.
- a) craftsman b) fisherman c) scribe d) farmer
- 3 She wears a crown on her
- a) head b) feet c) legs d) hands
- 4 In hot weather, you must stay in the
- a) share b) sun c) moon d) shade

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

conditioning – clothing – cool – drinking – hot

In extreme heat, we should drink lots of water, even if we don't feel thirsty. We should open the windows when there's a (1) wind. We should wear light, cool (2) We should try to spend time in cool buildings with air (3) We shouldn't go outside in (4) weather.

Read the text and answer the questions:

6

My name is Ahmed. I like traveling very much. I visited many places around Egypt. Last weekend, I went to Taba. It's a beautiful place by the sea. There's a lot to see and do there. I went with my family. We went by bus. We stayed in an eco-lodge.

We did many activities there. We swam in the sea and made sandcastles. We also enjoyed diving, hiking, and camping. We saw a lot of camels, the Nubian ibex, and rare birds as Taba is full of fantastic wildlife. The local people are very friendly, so we usually have a meal with them to talk about their culture. We left the place late at night. We were sad to leave. It was a fantastic holiday.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Taba is good for
a) hunting b) eco-tourism c) shopping d) floods
- 2 We were to leave Taba.
a) pleased b) happy c) unhappy d) glad

Answer the following questions:

- 3 How did they go to Taba?
- 4 Why do they usually have a meal with the local people?



Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 good – I'm – very – at – football – playing.
.....
- 2 does – help – How – tourism – community – our?
.....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- 1 I (mustn't) study hard.
- 2 He (always) swims. He hates swimming.

Punctuate the following:

1

what's your favorite food
.....

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"My favorite clothes"

my favorite – white shirt
.....
.....
.....



Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

6

- 1 Ahmed likes his school
 a) bus b) uniform c) teachers d) doors
- 2 Boys wear white and blue trousers.
 a) hats b) shirts c) dresses d) shoes
- 3 The girls don't wear
 a) skirts b) bags c) socks d) trousers
- 4 Boys and girls have to wear a every day.
 a) boots b) scarf c) coat d) tie



Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 She is good at reading, but she is at drawing.
 a) cold b) bad c) big d) fat
- 2 A is a very big person.
 a) rich b) nice c) giant d) poor
- 3 We can eat for dessert.
 a) meat b) rice c) chocolate d) bread
- 4 A helps sick animals.
 a) teacher b) vet c) doctor d) scribe

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

favorites – club – football – playing – eating

We are watching a squash match. I love squash and I'm good at (1) tennis, too. My brother is good at (2) . My mom's (3) are sailing and handball. My brother and I play many sports in the (4) . In Egypt, we have many kinds of sports.

Read the text and answer the questions:

6

I'm Noha. I live in Aswan. I'm in grade five. I get up at six o'clock. I have my breakfast with my family. I have cheese, yogurt, and fruit salad. My sister has fried eggs and bread. My parents have ful medames. In the afternoon, my mom and I go to the market. We buy chicken, burger, vegetables, fruits, and rice for lunch. My sister and I help our mother in the kitchen. I study my lessons after lunch. I go to bed at nine o'clock.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about Noha's
a) friends b) family c) school d) sports
- 2 The underlined phrase "get up" means
a) wake up b) play c) go d) sleep

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What does Noha have for breakfast?
- 4 Where does Noha go in the afternoon?



Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 makes – he – shoes – his workshop – in – shoemaker.
.....

- 2 market – onions – sells – She – the – at.
.....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- 1 We mustn't (talking) in the library.
- 2 She didn't (cleaned) the room yesterday.

Punctuate the following:

1

i live in Cairo
.....

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"A fantastic place in Egypt"

beautiful place – had lunch
.....
.....
.....
.....



Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Hamza's father is a
 a) doctor b) tour guide c) teacher d) carpenter
- 2 Tour guides show the country they are visiting.
 a) tourists b) pilots c) fishermen d) teachers
- 3 Tour guides need to be
 a) bad b) sad c) friendly d) old
- 4 Tourists should have a/an holiday.
 a) terrible b) poor c) awful d) good



Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Football is very in Egypt.
 a) popular b) smooth c) sleepy d) busy
- 2 He packed his clothes in a small
 a) kettle b) pot c) suitcase d) pencil case
- 3 Wheat is a very useful kind of
 a) vegetable b) fruit c) meat d) grain
- 4 The movie was, so I stopped watching it.
 a) boring b) interesting c) exciting d) wonderful

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

climate – cold – rainy – winters – dry

Egypt has a nice variety of weather. It is usually very (1) in deserts. In Egypt, we have hot summers. Our (2) are cooler in Egypt. The desert has a very special (3) with very hot days and very (4) nights.

Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Once upon a time, there was a kind and honest shoemaker. He lived in a town with his wife. They were very poor, but they were very happy. The shoemaker worked hard, but he had no money. One night, the shoemaker was in his workshop. There was not enough leather to make new shoes. He cut out the leather for the next day. The next morning, he found two pairs of beautiful shoes. They were made by the elves.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The shoemaker was
a) rich b) poor c) foolish d) cold
- 2 The shoemaker and his were happy.
a) brother b) sister c) father d) wife

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Where did the shoemaker work?
- 4 Summarize the text in two sentences.



Writing



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

1 sleeping – he – yesterday – at – wasn't – night.
.....

2 favorite – chocolate – Farida's – is – food.
.....



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

1 Are there (some) mangoes?

2 She was (cook) dinner.



Punctuate the following:

1

hedaya Malak is a famous egyptian taekwondo player.
.....



Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Our school uniform"

uniform – smart
.....
.....
.....
.....



Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 I like visiting my
 a) uncle b) doctor c) cousin d) grandma
- 2 My grandma has in the garden.
 a) orange trees b) onions c) mango trees d) lime trees
- 3 We have in our garden.
 a) tomatoes b) onions c) orange trees d) lemon trees
- 4 My grandma made for me.
 a) koshari b) beans c) mahalabia d) salad



Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 I wear football to play football.
 a) goggles b) boots c) sandals d) rackets
- 2 A is a very large building built a long time ago.
 a) cage b) castle c) box d) garden
- 3 could buy and sell everything in Ancient Egypt.
 a) Traders b) Scribes c) Doctors d) Teachers
- 4 Mona is wearing a dress, it has red and black dots all over it.
 a) spotted b) striped c) costume d) tie

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

Cars – stay – foot – environment – plane

Eco-tourism is unusual and exciting. It looks after the (1) and helps local people. Eco-tourists don't like to travel by (2) They travel by trains, on (3), or by bikes. They (4) in small local hotels.

Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a job. They could be fishermen, bakers, or doctors, but most people worked as farmers. They worked in fields near their homes. They grew crops, like wheat and corn. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were good. They made beautiful gold jewelry, and sculptures. They used to weave clothes and make colorful cooking pots. Everyone in Ancient Egypt knew that work was important for life, so the Ancient Egyptians were very successful!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about _____ in Ancient Egypt.
a) cloth b) pots c) jobs d) food
- 2 _____ worked in fields near their homes.
a) Fishermen b) Farmers c) Doctors d) Nurses

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What crops did Ancient Egyptian farmers grow? _____
- 4 What did Ancient Egyptian craftsmen do? _____



Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 wears – She – skirt – a gray – cotton.

- 2 does – How often – dinner – make – he?

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- 1 They are good at (play) football.
- 2 We (go) to the zoo yesterday.

Punctuate the following:

1

where did you go on monday?

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

“Different jobs”

doctor – helping sick people





Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

- 1 Kareem's father is a
 a) doctor b) tour guide c) teacher d) farmer
- 2 Tour guides show the country they are visiting.
 a) tourists b) engineers c) fishermen d) students
- 3 Tour guides need to be
 a) bad b) sad c) friendly d) impolite
- 4 Tourists should have a holiday.
 a) bad b) terrible c) awful d) good

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



Reading



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Lions are kept in a at the zoo.
 a) cage b) page c) bag d) coin
- 2 People wear sweaters and in cold weather.
 a) goggles b) shorts c) coats d) rings
- 3 A is a bad dream.
 a) shade b) nightmare c) problem d) traffic
- 4 You can know today's date from the on the wall.
 a) calendar b) waterfall c) lake d) island



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

stop – shut – protect – on – off

To stay safe during a sandstorm, you have to follow some instructions. Wear a scarf to (1) your face. Stay inside, so the sand can't get in your mouth. Drive to the side of the road, so you can (2) your car. Make sure your windows are (3) so no sand can get in. Turn (4) air conditioning to stop the sand from coming in.



Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Robot is a machine. It is a special kind of machine that moves. You can control it from a computer. Because it is a machine, it doesn't make mistakes. It doesn't get tired. Robots are all round us. Some robots are used to make things. Robots can help make cars, explore volcanoes, and clean things. These robots can help clean your house. They can be used to help answer telephone calls. Some robots look like humans, but most robots just look like machines.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The word **They** refers to
a) computers b) robots c) animals d) volcanoes
- 2 Most robots just look like
a) humans b) cars c) machines d) clothes

Answer the following questions:

- 3 How can you control a robot?
- 4 What jobs can robots do?



Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 are – **The** – working – ants – hard.
.....

- 2 do – – always – homework – my.
.....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- 1 Jack (**sees**) a very big giant last night.
- 2 Everyone (**have**) a job in Ancient Egypt.

Punctuate the following:

1

- i practice tennis a lot in the summer
.....

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"My favorite healthy food"

fruits and vegetables – balanced diet

.....

.....

.....

.....





Listening

6

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 The desert has a very special
a) meal b) climate c) mountain d) wind
- 2 The temperature can go to °C.
a) zero b) one c) two d) three
- 3 People who live in the desert try to keep at night.
a) cool b) calm c) warm d) happy
- 4 The nights in the desert are very
a) hot b) sunny c) warm d) cold



Reading

4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 People wear hats to their faces from the sun.
a) leave b) protect c) make d) have
- 2 A/An is a bad dream.
a) shade b) gate c) nightmare d) gas
- 3 Gases from cars and factories are called
a) emissions b) greenhouses c) gardens d) sports
- 4 I like ice cream for
a) desert b) forest c) coral d) dessert

4

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

belt – gloves – pockets – striped – crown

I am Talia. I am wearing a (1) dress with a (2) There are two (3) I like wearing (4) on my hands, they are white.

6

Read the text and answer the questions:

There are many things we can do to live a healthy life. For example, we can eat fruit and vegetable in our meals. Unhealthy food is bad for us. Try to do some exercise. You can ride your bike to school. Also, you should have enough sleep, not less than six hours.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 isn't good for us.

- a) Healthy food b) Unhealthy food c) Fruit d) Vegetable

2 You should sleep hours.

- a) six b) five c) four d) three

Answer the following questions:

3 What should you do to live a healthy life?

4 Why should we ride bikes?



Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

1 you – home – Do – at – grow – fruit?

2 never – after – A – is – work – tired.

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

1 Mr. Ahmed (catch) the bus every day.

2 We (sleep) at 5 am yesterday.

Punctuate the following:

1

hager wants mango pineapple and orange to eat.

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

“Eco-tourism”

help environment – unusual and exciting





Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

- 1 Omar has got brothers.
a) four b) two c) five d) three
- 2 Omar and his brothers go to school
a) on foot b) by bus c) by car d) by train
- 3 They go to the park on
a) Saturday b) Monday c) Tuesday d) Friday
- 4 They play at the park.
a) basketball b) tennis c) football d) volleyball

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)



Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 My school is a blue skirt and a yellow T-shirt.
a) uniform b) bag c) book d) subject
- 2 Eco-tourism helps to the wildlife.
a) ask b) build c) buy d) protect
- 3 The nightmare is a very bad
a) name b) person c) dream d) drink
- 4 A helps sick animals.
a) teacher b) vet c) dentist d) doctor

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

amazing – guide – awful – like – tourists

Many people in Egypt work in tourism. A tour (1) shows the tourists the country. He needs to know the places that the (2) want to visit. Egypt is an (3) place for tourists. I would (4) to be a tour guide in the future.

Read the text and answer the questions:

6

People have three meals every day: breakfast, lunch, and dinner. **They** eat these meals in the morning, in the afternoon, and in the evening. But most people don't care about what they should eat for each meal. Doctors say that healthy food is very important and people should eat lots of fruits and vegetables to keep healthy. They also advise people to drink a lot of water and practice a sport every day.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 People have meals every day.
a) four b) one c) three d) five
- 2 The underlined word "They" refers to
a) people b) meals c) fruits d) vegetables

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What should people eat?
- 4 Summarize the text in one sentence.



Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 eat – We – in – mustn't – the – classroom.
.....
- 2 flowers – full – The – gardens – are – of.
.....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- 1 She went to the shop to (bought) a dress.
- 2 What were you (do) yesterday morning?

Punctuate the following:

1

does Ahmed go to school on Monday
.....

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Water pollution"

What are the causes? – What are the solutions?



Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Sami went to on a trip.
a) Cairo b) Alexandria c) Paris d) Giza
- 2 He went to Alex to in the sea.
a) play b) dive c) run d) swim
- 3 He went there by
a) car b) bus c) plane d) train
- 4 It was a/an trip.
a) awful b) bad c) boring d) exciting



Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Eco-tourism after the environment.
a) plays b) looks c) eats d) goes
- 2 It's to eat a balanced diet.
a) healthy b) unhealthy c) bad d) sad
- 3 Girls and boys have to wear at school.
a) dresses b) jeans c) uniforms d) galabeya
- 4 I'm doing a school about Egyptian clothes.
a) project b) story c) trip d) timetable

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

for – much – toxic – hospital – many

I can't breathe. The air is black and (1) There are too (2) emissions from cars. It's dangerous (3) children. My little brother had to go to the (4) because of problems with his breathing.

Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Amira and Adel are a brother and a sister. They usually have a nice weekend. They play football together in the park on Thursday after school. Then Amira helps her mom clean the house. Adel goes to the supermarket with his dad to buy things for the family. On Friday, they visit their grandparents in Mansoura and spend the day on the farm. On Saturday evening, they go to the cinema to watch a movie.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Amira and Adel spent a weekend.
a) bad b) sad c) boring d) nice
- 2 helps her mom clean the house.
a) Amira b) Adel c) Father d) Amira and Adel

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Why do Adel and father go to the supermarket?
- 4 What do they do on Friday?



Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 is – She – playing – good – squash – at.
.....

- 2 wear – to – boots – football – play – I.
.....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- 1 I (mustn't) tidy up my room. It's very messy.
- 2 He was (travel)) to Cairo yesterday evening.

Punctuate the following:

1

ahmed doesn't have any grapes
.....

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Elephantine Island"

visit – Aswan

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

- 1 Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian player. (الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
- a) karate b) taekwondo c) tennis d) football
- 2 She carried the flag at the Tokyo Olympics Games.
- a) Egyptian b) French c) American d) Chinese
- 3 She began practicing taekwondo at the age of.....
- a) six b) four c) seven d) one
- 4 She won many at the age of 14.
- a) flags b) books c) pens d) prizes



Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 Animals eat plants, insects, and other animals to
- a) die b) breathe c) jump d) survive
- 2 She is a spotted dress with a belt.
- a) eating b) sleeping c) playing d) wearing
- 3 The nightmare is a very bad
- a) dream b) name c) person d) drink
- 4 A heat wave is when the temperature goes very
- a) low b) slow c) high d) deep

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

mahalabia – school – garden – fresh – mango

I like chicken and fish. But my favorite food is (1) My father grows mango trees in the (2) I use mangoes to make (3) mango juice. We can use them to make fruit salad, too. If we add sugar and milk, we can turn them into delicious (4)

Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Sharm El-Sheikh is the best place to visit in Egypt. I traveled there with my uncle. He told me that Sharm El-Sheikh is good for eco-tourism because there are valleys, mountains, deserts, and seas. So, tourists can do different activities. Tourists can enjoy hiking, camping, and diving. They can find everything in Sharm El-Sheikh for a great holiday. Tourists can stay in eco-lodges. They can also meet the local people, have a meal with them, and talk to them about their culture.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Sharm El-Sheikh is in
a) Libya b) Jordan c) Oman d) Egypt
- 2 The underlined word "hiking" means
a) sleeping b) running c) walking d) drawing

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What activities can tourists do in Sharm El-Sheikh?
- 4 Summarize the text in one sentence.



Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 hard – must – **We** – at – work – school.
.....

- 2 there – tomatoes – **Are** – any?
.....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- 1 Mona is (**good**) than Nada.
- 2 Maged (**never is**) late for school.

Punctuate the following:

1

i want to be a farmer
.....

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"How to keep safe in a sandstorm"

protect – inside

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 We visited yesterday.
a) Aswan b) Alexandria c) Luxor d) Dahab
- 2 We went there by
a) taxi b) plane c) train d) car
- 3 We saw Elephantine there.
a) Lake b) Island c) Pool d) Camp
- 4 There are no, but there are lots of trees.
a) forests b) trees c) islands d) rains



Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 She is good at sports. She's a famous
a) athlete b) doctor c) teacher d) vet
- 2 Lamar on the door before she came in.
a) tasted b) wanted c) knocked d) lived
- 3 To "....." means to pick something up quickly.
a) breathe b) cut off c) grab d) chop
- 4 She went to the kitchen to a cake.
a) buy b) make c) do d) write

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

grew – fields – farmers – job – fish

Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a(1).... . They could be fishermen, bakers or doctors. But most people worked as(2)..... . They worked in(3)..... near their homes. They(4)..... crops like wheat and corn. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were good.

Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Taba is an excellent example of a part of Egypt where eco-tourism works well. There are many activities to do in Taba. Tourists can hike in the mountains and valleys. They can swim and dive in the sea. They can also camp and stay in eco-lodges. The wildlife is fantastic in Taba. There is the Nubian ibex and many rare birds that live there. If you like history, visit the Nawamis. It is a village of round, very old buildings.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Taba is a good place for
a) eco-tourism b) farming c) running d) reading
- 2 Tourists can in the mountains and valleys.
a) drive b) swim c) hike d) play

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What can tourists do in the sea?
- 4 What is Nawamis?



Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 having – he – lunch – Was – at – home?
.....

- 2 at – He – reading – good – is – English.
.....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- 1 Are there (some) tomatoes?
- 2 I must (bought) some oranges.

Punctuate the following:

1

i like Egyptian food
.....

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

“Football”

favorite – pitch



Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

6

- 1 Eco-tourism is a/an idea.
a) bad b) ugly c) exciting d) weak
- 2 Sherif is a in Hurghada.
a) trader b) tour guide c) doctor d) vet
- 3 He tells the tourists where they can
a) play b) walk c) run d) dive
- 4 Normal tourism the natural environment.
a) looks after b) protects c) damages d) saves



Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 The is a box in which we keep animals.
a) ecosystem b) cage c) desert d) river
- 2 We stayed in the to avoid the hot sunshine.
a) summer b) heat wave c) storm d) shade
- 3 I can't climb the garden because it is high.
a) chair b) fence c) desk d) chair
- 4 Water is a very dangerous problem.
a) population b) sport c) wheel d) pollution

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

robe – hidden – short – long – galabeya

The Egyptian people wear many traditional clothes. Many men wear (1)
This is a long white (2) that is very popular. It looks really cool. It's made
from cotton and is usually white. The sleeves are (3) It has (4)
pockets, but they are long.

Read the text and answer the questions:

6

When harmful chemicals go into water bodies like rivers, lakes, and seas, we call this water pollution. It can kill organisms that live in the water, such as fish, birds, and crabs. It also can kill the birds that eat the fish. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats. We should save as much water as possible. We shouldn't throw garbage in or near a lake or a beach.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about pollution.
a) land b) water c) noise d) air
- 2 The underlined word "garbage" means
a) cities b) boxes c) animals d) trash

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What are the water bodies?
- 4 What can polluted water kill?



Writing



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 tomatoes – about – some – How – buying?
.....

- 2 a gold – She – wants – medal – win – to.
.....



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- 1 We (grow a ways) mangoes in our garden.
- 2 I have a (leather, black) bag.



Punctuate the following:

1

where can samy play tennis
.....



Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"The weather in Egypt"

nice variety of weather – cool winter

.....

.....

.....

.....





Listening

6

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Hedaya Malak is
a) lazy b) famous c) slow d) bad
- 2 Hedaya plays
a) football b) tennis c) taekwondo d) basketball
- 3 Hedaya carried the Egyptian
a) city b) flag c) river d) lake
- 4 She won prizes.
a) many b) some c) much d) any



Reading

4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The Elephantine is in Aswan.
a) River b) Island c) Lake d) Oasis
- 2 A is a very very big person.
a) poor b) rich c) giant d) short
- 3 I have lunch a day.
a) ten b) one c) once d) two
- 4 We haven't got tomatoes.
a) some b) little c) any d) much

4

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

Egypt – traditional – are – from – has

The galabeya is a (1) Egyptian clothing. It is made (2) cotton. It (3) pockets but they are hidden. The sleeves (4) long so we do not get sunburned.

6

Read the text and answer the questions:

My name is Samy. I am in primary five. English is my favorite subject. I want to be a vet because I like helping animals. I always take care of my little dog. Its name is Jack. Jack is good, strong, and helpful. One day, a bad boy hit me. Jack quickly helped me. What a brave dog!

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 is in primary five.
a) Jack b) Samy c) Jack and Samy d) They
- 2 Jack is not a dog.
a) good b) bad c) strong d) helpful

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What is Samy's favorite subject?
- 4 How did Jack help Samy?



Writing



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 good – am – English – I – at – speaking.
.....

- 2 buying – How – grapes – some – about?
.....



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- 1 I must (doing) my English homework.

- 2 (Are) they reading at 2 pm yesterday?



Punctuate the following:

1

we always help local people
.....



Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

“My favorite sport”

What is your favorite sport? – Where do you play it?





Listening

Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

- 1 Farmers worked in near their houses. (الإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)
 a) factories b) fields c) schools d) hospitals
- 2 They grew crops like wheat and
 a) bananas b) corn c) vegetables d) rice
- 3 Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made beautiful jewelry.
 a) gold b) silver c) bronze d) metal
- 4 Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a
 a) farm b) statue c) job d) factory



Reading

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 is something that isn't alive.
 a) Living b) Rainforest c) Non-living d) Rockpool
- 2 The film was....., so I stopped watching it.
 a) exciting b) boring c) interesting d) nice
- 3 The of galabeya are long.
 a) sleeves b) belts c) boots d) buttons
- 4 I was traveling by boat to the
 a) street b) road c) desert d) island

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

back – pack – excited – shorts – sunglasses

I am Soha. I'm going to travel to Alexandria for a holiday with my family next week. We are very (1)..... We need to (2)..... our suitcases. My brother Hany needs to pack his swimming (3)..... to swim in the sea. I will take my (4)..... because it will be sunny. It will be a nice holiday.

Read the text and answer the questions:

6

My school uniform is very special and smart. The girls and boys have different uniforms at my school. The girls wear a long, dark blue skirt. They wear a pale green T-shirt. It is a short-sleeved, cotton one. They don't wear a tie. The boys wear dark blue trousers and a green T-shirt. They have to wear a tie every day. It is striped green and blue. When it's cold, we wear a dark green jacket with pockets.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 My school uniform is special and
a) smart b) tight c) small d) big
- 2 The boys wear dark trousers.
a) yellow b) green c) red d) blue

Answer the following questions:

- 3 What do the girls wear?
- 4 What do they wear when it's cold?



Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

- 1 like – pots – making – We – clay – from.
.....

- 2 wanted – sell – Jack – cow – to – the.
.....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

- 1 How about (visit) Cairo?

- 2 (Are) there any milk?

Punctuate the following:

1

where do you play tennis
.....

Write a biography of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"A famous athlete"

Who is she? – Why is she important?

.....

.....

.....

.....



Listening



Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 Fareeda's favorite healthy food is
a) pizza b) fish c) chicken d) salad
- 2 Fareeda's uncle grows onions and
a) carrots b) apples c) rice d) potatoes
- 3 Dina likes
a) bread b) water c) chocolate d) meat
- 4 Dina has a/an tree in her garden.
a) mango b) apple c) lemon d) orange



Reading



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

4

- 1 A in Ancient Egypt bought and sold things like gold.
a) trader b) scribe c) vet d) fisherman
- 2 I wear black on my hands in winter.
a) shoes b) pants c) gloves d) sunglasses
- 3 We mustn't talk in the
a) library b) street c) stadium d) playground
- 4 The is a box in which we keep animals.
a) citadel b) castle c) cage d) cave



Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

4

pool – rackets – pitch – goggles – boots

I like to play football on the (1) I wear my football (2) to play with my friends. My sister goes swimming in the (3) She uses her (4) to protect her eyes.



Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Football is one of the most popular sports in the world. People like it very much. People play football on pitches. It is one of the most important games in the Olympic Games since 1900 . People play football by foot, but the *goalkeeper is the only player who can hold the ball with his hands. People play football in two teams. Each team consists of eleven players. The winner is the team who scores the most goals in the match.

*حارس المرمى

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 People play football on
a) pools b) pitches c) farms d) courts
- 2 The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the
a) foot b) match c) football d) pitch

Answer the following questions:

- 3 Who can hold the ball with his hand?
- 4 How many players are there in each team?



Writing

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

2

1 would – like – I – carrots – some – , please.
.....

2 beautiful – a – Egypt – is – very – country.
.....

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

2

1 I am great at (play) tennis.

2 We haven't got (some) sugar.

Punctuate the following:

1

my pajamas are really cool
.....

Write a text of about THIRTY (30) words using the following guiding elements:

5

"Sports equipment"

boots – rackets

.....

.....

.....

.....

Exam 1

30



Listening

Listen and choose the correct answer:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

4.5

- 1 Fares is years old.
(five – ten – four)
- 2 He has got brother(s).
(one – two – three)
- 3 They go to the park on
(Saturday – Tuesday – Friday)

Language Functions

Read and complete the dialogue:

Yes – vet – do – animals

- Ahmed : What job do you want to (1) when you grow up?
- Omar : I want to be a (2)
- Ahmed : Do you like (3) ?
- Omar : (4), I do.



Reading Comprehension

Read the text and answer the questions:

7.5

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian sports person. She is one of the two people who carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021. She was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 She began practicing at the age of seven.
(taekwondo – football – tennis)
- 2 Hedaya carried her country's in 2021.
(cup – club – flag)
- 3 She won the bronze in Tokyo in 2021.
(necklace – medal – glasses)

Answer the following questions:

4 Who is Hedaya Malak?

.....

5 When was she born?

.....

Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the correct answer:

5

- 1 Candies and cola are
a) healthy b) fresh c) unhealthy
- 2 The weather is It's very hot.
a) windy b) sunny c) cloudy
- 3 I wear to protect my eyes.
a) sunglasses b) gloves c) crowns
- 4 She's good at poems.
a) write b) writing c) wrote
- 5 Are there carrots?
a) an b) some c) any

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

5

- 1 sleep – I – late – never.
.....
- 2 an orange – Would – like – you?
.....
- 3 red – sweater – I'll – pack – my.
.....
- 4 very – summers – We – hot – have.
.....
- 5 hard – must – work – You.
.....



Listening



Listen and choose the correct answer:

4.5

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

- 1 My mom and I are going shopping at the
(school – supermarket – hospital)
- 2 We need milk to make
(bread – candy – cake)
- 3 We need bread to make sandwiches for
(lunch – dinner – breakfast)

Language Functions



Read and complete the dialogue:

8

friends – How often – tennis – club

Omar : What is your favorite sport?

Ramy : My favorite sport is (1)

Omar : Where do you play it?

Ramy : I play it in the (2)

Omar : Who do you play tennis with?

Ramy : I play tennis with my (3)

Omar : (4) do you go to the club?

Ramy : I go to the club three times a week.



Reading Comprehension



Read the text and answer the questions:

7.5

An eco-system is a place where animals, plants, and other living things live together. Animals and plants need each other to live. They also need suitable conditions. Animals eat plants, insects, and other animals to survive. They need food, water, and shelter. Plants need sunlight and water to survive. They also need the right climate.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
(eco-hotel – eco-tourism – eco-system)
- 2 The underlined pronoun “They” refers to
(animals – deserts – people)
- 3 Plants need and water to survive.
(people – sunlight – money)

Answer the following questions:

- 4 What is an eco-system?
- 5 What do plants need to survive?

Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the correct answer:

5

- 1 The are buzzing all the day.
a) snakes b) ants c) bees
- 2 People wear hats to themselves from the sun.
a) hurt b) protect c) keep
- 3 Wheat is a very useful kind of
a) vegetables b) meat c) grains
- 4 We squash at 7 pm yesterday.
a) playing b) played c) were playing
- 5 you meet Ali last night?
a) Do b) Does c) Did

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

5

- 1 am – I – Island – Elephantine – on.
.....
- 2 have – mango – trees – you – Do – any?
.....
- 3 a – want – be – . – to – vet.
.....
- 4 some – you – Would – like – oranges?
.....
- 5 sleep – to – I – bedroom – went – my – to.
.....

Exam 3



Listening



Listen and choose the correct answer:

(للإجابة راجع نص الاستماع آخر الكتاب)

4.5

- 1 Hassan's father is a/an
(doctor – teacher – farmer)
- 2 He works in a /an
(school – farm – hospital)
- 3 He gets up at
(seven – six – nine)

Language Functions



Read and complete the dialogue:

8

chocolate – list – dinner – need

Dad : OK, what do we (1) to get, Amal?

Amal : We need (2)

Dad : Is it on Mom's (3) ?

Amal : No, it isn't. But can I have some, please?

Dad : OK, but don't eat it until after (4), Amal.



Reading Comprehension



Read the text and answer the questions:

7.5

Youssef, Nesma and Wael are friends. They are at the same age. They will visit Al Fayoum next Friday. They are **excited** to go there. They need to pack their suitcases for the holiday. Youssef will need his sneakers because they will walk around a lot and he needs to wear something comfortable on his feet. Nesma will pack her sunglasses because it will be very sunny there. Wael will pack his swimming shorts because he wants to go swimming there.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1 Youssef, Nesma and Wael are
(friends – cousins – brothers)
- 2 The underlined word “excited” means
(angry – sad – happy)
- 3 It will be sunny in Al Fayoum so Nesma will pack her
(necklace – sunglasses – gloves)

Answer the following questions:

- 4 When will the friends visit Al Fayoum?
- 5 Why does Youssef want to pack his sneakers?

Vocabulary and Structures

Choose the correct answer:

5

- 1 helps people learn about new cultures.
a) Pollution b) Tourism c) Wildlife
- 2 are good at making things by their hands.
a) Farmers b) Craftsmen c) Scribes
- 3 Salma is great at pictures.
a) draws b) draw c) drawing
- 4 We stayed in the to avoid the hot sunshine.
a) summer b) storm c) shade
- 5 Ahmed salad. He doesn't like it.
a) always eat b) never eats c) eats never

Reorder the words to make correct sentences:

5

- 1 in – there – boys – Are – the class – any?
- 2 wants – be – He – to – healthy.
- 3 good – I'm – piano – playing – at – the.
- 4 you – Did – play – video – games – yesterday?
- 5 travels – every – Dina – to – year – Paris.

Exam 1



Reading

Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text:

8

playing – like – in – with

My favorite sport is football. I(1)..... football very much. I play it once a week. I play it well. I play football(2)..... my friends. I play it(3)..... the club. I play it in the evening. I like it very much. It's fun. I enjoy(4)..... football.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

6

- 1 the basbousa in the oven.
a) Mix b) Eat c) Drink d) Bake
- 2 She is good at playing the piano. She is a
a) scientist b) pianist c) geologist d) journalist
- 3 To "....." means to pick something up quickly.
a) breathe b) cut off c) grab d) chop
- 4 She is wearing on her hands.
a) belts b) gloves c) sunglasses d) boots

Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Cairo is the capital of Egypt. It's a busy city. About 20 million people live and work there. People can have a nice sightseeing in Cairo. You can take the subway or drive a car to the museum. You can catch a taxi to get to the Cairo Tower. It's the tallest place in Cairo. You can see all the city from it.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 The general idea of the text is about
a) Alexandria b) Cairo c) Giza d) Aswan
- 2 Cairo is a/an city.
a) bad b) busy c) small d) dangerous
- 3 There are million people live and work in Cairo.
a) 1 b) 2 c) 10 d) 20
- 4 The Cairo is the tallest place in Cairo.
a) Zoo b) Museum c) Tower d) Pyramid



Writing



Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c:

4

- 1 have – some – juice – like – I'd – to.
 - a) I'd like to have some juice.
 - b) I'd like have to some juice.
 - c) I'd have like to some juice.
- 2 your – should – wear – You – uniform – school.
 - a) You should wear your uniform school.
 - b) You should wear your school uniform.
 - c) You wear should school your uniform.



Order the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

6

- | | |
|---|-----------|
| a) I ordered fish and rice there. | 1. () |
| b) I ordered salad, too. | 2. () |
| c) After I had my meal, I went back home. | 3. () |
| d) Yesterday, I went to a restaurant. | 4. () |





Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text:

8

juice – mango – delicious – drinking

I like to eat fruit. My favorite fruit is (1) . . . We can make (2) from it. It's very (3) . . . I like (4) it very much.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

1 I'm good playing football.

- a) at b) for c) in d) on

2 I planted an apple tree in my

- a) library b) office c) room d) garden

3 To be healthy, eat healthy food like

- a) chocolate b) vegetabales c) sweets d) water

4 The are buzzing.

- a) birds b) bees c) ants d) chickens



Read the text and answer the questions:

6

My favorite food is fish. It's a delicious meal. Fish is healthy. I always eat it with rice and salad. I buy it at the market. I like fish a lot.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1 The general idea of the text is about

- a) clothes b) shop c) fish d) school

2 It's a/an meal.

- a) unhealthy b) delicious c) bad d) fat

3 I eat fish with

- a) rice and salad b) chicken c) mango d) apple

4 I buy fish at the

- a) shop b) market c) restaurant d) park



Writing



Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c:

4

1 you – What – would – like?

a) Like you what would.

b) You like what would.

c) What would you like?

2 very – were – They – poor.

a) Were they poor very.

b) They were very poor.

c) Poor they were very.



Order the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

6

a) We played football.

1. ()

b) Then, I met my friends.

2. ()

c) After that I went back home.

3. ()

d) Yesterday, I went to the club.

4. ()





Reading



Read and choose the correct answer to complete the text:

8

one – foot – in – park

My name is Ali. I'm (1) primary five. I've got two brothers and (2) sister. My brothers go to school by bus. I go to school on (3). But my sister go to school with my father by car. On Fridays, we go to the (4) with our parents.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

6

- 1 It's to eat a lot of chocolate.
a) useful b) good c) healthy d) unhealthy
- 2 My grandmother potatoes and onions.
a) drinks b) sleeps c) plays d) grows
- 3 We sit under the of this tree and have lunch.
a) shade b) shape c) shore d) shop
- 4 I always wear my swimming in the sea.
a) goggles b) beach c) pitch d) court



Read the text and answer the questions:

6

Asser is excited. He is packing his suitcase for the holiday tomorrow. He is going to Al Fayoum to see his uncle and aunt. He is packing his green T-shirt and the swimming shorts because they have a lovely pool. He will need his sunglasses because it will be sunny. He should pack a sweater because it can be cool in the evenings. He will pack his stripped pajamas for sleep.

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1 Asser is
a) sad b) fat c) thin d) excited
- 2 Asser will go to
a) Luxor b) Aswan c) Al Fayoum d) Giza
- 3 Asser's uncle has a lovely
a) river b) lake c) sea d) pool
- 4 Asser will need his sweater because it can be
a) sunny b) cool c) warm d) cloudy



Writing

Choose the correct form of the following sentences from a, b, or c:

4

- 1 watching – you – What – are?
a) What are you watching?
b) What you are watching?
c) What watching you are?
- 2 is – in – hot – summer – It.
a) It summer is hot in.
b) It is hot in summer.
c) It in summer hot.

Order the following scrambled sentences to form a meaningful paragraph from a, b, c or d:

6

- | | |
|--|-----------|
| a) Then, I have breakfast with my family. | 1. () |
| b) After that, I go to school with my friends. | 2. () |
| c) I wake up at 7 every morning. | 3. () |
| d) I wash my face and brush my teeth. | 4. () |

Tapescripts

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات نصوص الاستماع الخاصة بالكتاب.

UNIT 1

Practice on Lesson 1

Fareeda likes food. Her favorite food is chocolate. She thinks that eating a lot of chocolate is unhealthy, but it's OK if we eat a little. She also likes to eat fruits. Her favorite fruit is mango. She has a mango tree in the garden.

Practice on Lesson 3

Jack bought some special beans. The beans grew into a giant stalk. He climbed the stalk and found a magic hen in a cage. Next to the hen was a golden egg. The hen stayed with Jack and his mother. They became rich and happy ever after.

Test Yourself on Unit 1

Marwan eats too much unhealthy food. He always has cheese, jam, and bread for breakfast. He has fried chicken, French fries, and rice for lunch. Then he has pizza for dinner. At night, he has chocolate and cookies as a snack. I think he needs to eat more healthy food.

UNIT 2

Practice on Lesson 1

Seleem and Wael are friends. Wael is very good at playing football, but he is bad at playing handball. Seleem is good at playing squash, but he is bad at playing tennis. Seleem is watching an old squash match. Raneem El Weleily is winning the match.

Practice on Lesson 3

Rami, Hana, Ahmed, and Amira like sports. Rami likes karate as he can do a lot of moves. Hana likes to swim. She goes to the swimming pool twice a week. Ahmed plays football on

the pitch. Amira is a good squash player. Her racket is white and blue.

Test Yourself on Unit 2

Hedaya was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She won the bronze medal at the Rio Olympics in 2016. She also won the bronze medal in Tokyo in 2021.

Al-Azhar Corner

My name is Marwan. I'm good at tennis. I go to the club every Friday to play tennis. I'm bad at handball. I never win.

UNIT 3

Practice on Lesson 1

My name is Mariam. Tomorrow, I will travel to Al Fayoum. I need to pack my suitcase. I need to pack my green T-shirt and my black pants. My sister Soha needs to pack her sunglasses because it will be very sunny. She will pack a sweater. It can be cool in the evenings.

Practice on Lesson 3

There was a kind and honest shoemaker. One day, the shoemaker was too tired to make the shoes. He cut out the leather and left it until the next morning. Two little elves helped the shoemaker and made a beautiful pair of shoes for him. The shoemaker was very happy and gave new clothes to the elves.

Test Yourself on Unit 3

At school, boys wear a dark blue shirt. Boys have to wear a tie every day. It's white with light blue stripes on it. Boys wear dark gray trousers. The girls wear a dark blue shirt, too. They wear a dark gray skirt. In winter, boys and girls wear a dark red jacket.

UNIT 4

Practice on Lesson 1

Elephantine Island is the oldest part of Aswan. The island is full of history. You can visit the Aswan Museum, where you can find very old things from the island, like a rare calendar from the reign of Thutmose III. The island is also a beautiful, calm place.

Practice on Lesson 2

I'm Sara. I was studying English at 10 yesterday. My family and I were having breakfast at 8 in the morning. We were listening to the radio yesterday evening. We went to a lake near the house. The fish were swimming in the lake.

Practice on Lesson 3

Sherif is a tour guide. He is telling us about the pros and cons of tourism. It gives jobs for local people. It helps people learn about new cultures. But it creates too much carbon dioxide from plane journeys. Tourism damages the natural environment. It damages historical places or monuments.

Test Yourself on Unit 4

Elephantine Island is an amazing place. It's in Aswan. Tourists come from all over the world to visit it. They can travel by boat to visit it. The island is the oldest part of Aswan. The island is a beautiful historical place. There are no forests, but there are lots of trees.

UNIT 5

Practice on Lesson 1

Ancient Egyptian women worked at home and could work outside, too. Women cooked meals and cleaned the house. They took care of their children. Women could weave baskets and bake bread. They could even become pharaohs. One famous queen in Ancient Egypt was Hatshepsut.

Practice on Lesson 3

The grasshopper was lazy. He thought work was boring. Now, it's winter, and it is very cold. The grasshopper is hungry. He doesn't have any food, and he can't find any. The ant wasn't lazy. He worked, and now he has food.

Test Yourself on Unit 5

Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest. The living things in a rockpool are fish, crabs, and seaweed. The non-living things are rocks, water, sand, and sunlight. Animals and plants need each other to live. They need food, water, and shelter to survive.

Al-Azhar Corner

Ancient Egyptian craftsmen were very good. They made beautiful paintings, beautiful gold jewelry, and sculptures. They used to weave beautiful clothes and make colorful cooking pots. People with this job made things from clay, wood, and gold.

UNIT 6

Practice on Lesson 1

I'm Amira. My father is a weatherman. He says it is going to rain in Cairo today. It's going to be very windy in Alexandria today. Today in Sharm El-Sheikh, they will have some ice. In Luxor, they

are going to have a storm, so they should stay at home.

Practice on Lessons 2&3

I'm Salma. I always wake up at 7 am every morning. I usually have breakfast at 8 am. I often drive my car. I sometimes take the bus. I sometimes watch TV at 5 o'clock. I never sleep late. I always go to sleep early.

Test Yourself on Unit 6

When there's a storm, stay inside and keep dry. Make sure you have candles and torches because there might be a power cut. Don't go anywhere by train. Don't stand under trees in case lightning strikes. Don't stand near wires – they could fall and give you an electric shock.

Al-Azhar Corner

It's going to be rainy in Cairo. It's never very cold in Sharm El-Sheikh, but today we have some ice. It's going to be windy in Alexandria. Luxor is going to have a storm, so stay at home.

اليوم

Yesterday, I was watching an old squash match between Raneem El Weleily and Nour El Sherbini. Raneem was winning the match. I like to play squash. I like to watch it, too. I play squash with my friend Hossam every Friday.

Ahmed is a good student. He likes his school uniform very much. He goes to school with his friends. They wear the school uniform every day. Boys wear white shirts and blue trousers. The girls don't wear trousers, but they wear blue skirts. Boys and girls have to wear a tie every day.

Hamza is my friend. His father is a tour guide. Tour guides always help tourists. They show tourists the country they are visiting. Tour guides need to be friendly. Tourists have fun when they visit other countries. They should have a good holiday.

I like visiting my grandma. She is very kind. She has mango trees in her garden. We have orange trees in our garden. She always cooks very delicious food. I visited her yesterday. She made mahalabia for me.

My name is Kareem. I live in Hurghada by the beach. My father is a tour guide. I want to be like him. He shows tourists the country they are visiting. He tells the tourists where they can dive. He needs to be friendly. Tourists should have a good holiday.

The desert has a very special climate, with very hot days and very cold nights. The temperature can go to 0 °C. This means that the people who live in the desert try to keep cool in the day and warm at night.

I am Omar. I am in grade five. I live in Cairo with a small family. I have got two brothers. We go to the same school. Our school is near our house. We always go to school on foot. We go to the park on Friday. We play football there.

Sami went to Alexandria on a trip. He went to Alex to swim in the sea. He went there with his family. They went by train. They ate a delicious meal at a famous restaurant. They walked along the beach. It was an exciting trip.

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She was born on April 21, 1993. She carried the Egyptian flag at the Tokyo Olympics Games. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14.

We visited Aswan yesterday. It was a nice trip. We went there by train. We went on a trip on Felucca. We saw Elephantine Island. There are no forests, but there are lots of trees.

Eco-tourism is an exciting idea. It's tourism that looks after the environment and helps local people. Sherif is a tour guide in Hurghada. He likes his job. He tells the tourists where they can dive. Eco-tourism is better than the normal tourism. Normal tourism usually damages the natural environment.

Hedaya Malak is a famous Egyptian taekwondo player. She is very good at playing taekwondo. She was born on April 21, 1993. She began practicing taekwondo at the age of seven and won many prizes at the age of 14. She carried the Egyptian flag at Tokyo Olympic Games in 2021.

There were many important jobs in Ancient Egypt. Farmers worked in fields near their houses. They grew crops like wheat and corn. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made beautiful gold jewelry. Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a job.

Fareeda and Dina are friends. They are at the same school. Fareeda likes healthy food. Her favorite healthy food is chicken. Her uncle grows onions and carrots. Dina eats unhealthy food. She likes chocolate. She has an orange tree in her garden, so she can make delicious orange juice.

Fares is ten years old. He has got three brothers. He always plays with them. They go to the park on Friday.

My mom and I are going shopping at the supermarket. First, we make a list of all the things we need to buy. We need milk to make a cake. We need bread to make sandwiches for lunch.

I am Hassan. I love my family so much. My father is a doctor. He works in a big hospital. He goes to work very early, so he gets up at six o'clock.

Writing Answers

يحتوي هذا الجزء على إجابات أسئلة الكتابة (براجراف) الخاصة بجميع الوحدات.

UNIT 1 Lesson 2

"Healthy food"

Healthy food helps us grow strong and stay healthy. You should make sure you eat a balanced diet, so your body gets the nutrients it needs. I have ful medames and bread for breakfast. I have chicken, rice, and salad for lunch. I have yogurt and fruit salad for dinner.

UNIT 1 Lessons 4 & 5

"My favorite recipe"

I like all kinds of food. My favorite food is ful medames. It's an easy recipe. I eat it with bread. We can add olive oil to it. It's delicious.

Test Yourself on Unit 1

"My shopping list"

My mom and I go shopping at the supermarket. First, we make a list of all the things we need to buy. We need milk to make a cake for breakfast. We need bread to make sandwiches for lunch.

UNIT 2 Lesson 2

"My favorite sport"

I love playing sports. I'm good at running. I can run very fast! I'm also great at playing football. I enjoy kicking the ball. I practice football with my friends in the club every day.

UNIT 2 Lessons 4 & 5

"Hedaya Malak"

Hedaya Malak is a famous athlete from Egypt. She is great at taekwondo. Hedaya started practicing taekwondo when she was 7. In 2016, Hedaya made her country

proud by winning a bronze medal at the Olympic Games. Then, she won many more medals around the world.

Test Yourself on Unit 2

“Water pollution”

Water pollution happens when harmful things like trash and chemicals get into rivers, lakes, and oceans. These things can make the water dirty and unhealthy. Animals living in polluted water can get sick, and plants may not grow well. Water pollution can cause animals to lose their homes and change their habitats.

UNIT 3 Lesson 2

“My favorite clothes”

I like to wear galabeya. I like the galabeya because it is comfortable, especially in the hot weather. The galabeya is cool because it's made from cotton. It's usually white, but you can get other colors too.

UNIT 3 Lessons 4 & 5

“My school uniform”

I wear a school uniform every day when I go to school. My uniform is blue and white. I have a blue shirt and white shorts. My friends and I look smart in our school uniforms.

Test Yourself on Unit 3

“Clothes”

In Egypt, people wear special clothes to keep them comfortable in the hot weather like the “galabeya”. It's made from cotton to help people stay cool. The sleeves are long, so we don't get sunburned!

UNIT 4 Lesson 2

“What were you doing?”

Yesterday at 6 am, I was getting up early. I was having my breakfast with my family at 7 am. At 10 am, I was going to the park with my mom. I was reading my storybook before bedtime yesterday at 10 pm.

UNIT 4 Lessons 4 & 5

“My favorite eco-resort”

Taba is my favorite eco-resort! Taba has lovely eco-friendly huts where tourists can stay. They are comfortable. In Taba, you can see the most fantastic wildlife in Egypt! You can see the Nubian ibex and some rare birds. There, you can hike, swim, dive, and go camping.

Test Yourself on Unit 4

“My trip to Aswan”

I went on a trip to Aswan with my family last month. First, we went to the Aswan Museum. Then, we went to Elephantine Island. I traveled by boat to the island with my friends. Next, we visited the temples of Philae. In the evening, we went to a Nubian village and learned about their culture.

UNIT 5 Lesson 2

“Ecosystem”

The connection between living and non-living things is called an ecosystem. There are different kinds of ecosystems. Ecosystems can be small, like a rockpool, or they can be very big, like the Amazon rainforest.

UNIT 5 Lessons 4 & 5

“A job you want to do”

I want to be a vet. I like to work with animals and I love this job. If animals are sick or injured, I can help to make them better. I think this job is very important.

Test Yourself on Unit 5

“Jobs in Ancient Egypt”

Everyone in Ancient Egypt had a job. But most people worked as farmers. Farmers worked hard in fields which were near their homes. They planted crops, usually grains like wheat, corn, and flax.

UNIT 6 Lesson 2

“My daily routine”

Every day, I get up early in the morning. First, I brush my teeth and wash my face. Then, I have a delicious breakfast. After that, I get dressed and walk to school. When I come back home, I have lunch and do my homework. In the evening, I read books. I never play video games.

UNIT 6 Lessons 4 & 5

“An extreme weather condition”

A tornado is a very strong wind that turns very fast. When a tornado comes, it can be very dangerous. It can blow houses, trees, and cars away! People need to stay safe and go to a safe place. After the tornado passes, people help each other clean up.

Test Yourself on Unit 6

“A heat wave”

A heat wave is when the weather is very hot for many days. A heat wave can make us feel tired. So, it is important to stay cool and drink lots of water. Wear light clothes and stay in the shade. Some people like to go swimming to cool down. Never leave pets or people in a hot car!